

# Unit 10 Review

## Main Voc

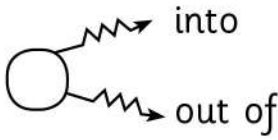
air conditioning	مكيف الهواء	platform	رصيف
assistant	مساعد	rail card	كارت اشتراك قطار
coach	مركبة / عربة قطار	return tickets	تذكرة ذهاب وعودة
breeze	نسيم	scenery	منظر
carriage	عربة قطار	single tickets	تذكرة ذهاب فقط
decision	قرار	midday bus	قطار منتصف اليوم
destination	جهة الوصول	sports centre	مركز رياضي
economy class	درجة اقتصادية	stopping train	قطار محطات فرعية
express train	قطار سريع	timetable	جدول مواعيد
ferry	معدية	crowded	مزدحم
first class	درجة أولى	book online	يحجز علي الانترنت
meeting	إجتماع	based on	مبني علي

## Expressions & Prepositions

make (a decision-promise- prediction)	يصنع (قرار-وعد - تنبؤ)
make it cooler	يجعله اكثر برودة
It doesn't matter	لايهم
on the platform	علي الرصيف
on a sleeper train	في قطار النوم
have a meeting	لديه إجتماع
put down the beds	يخفض السرير للأسفل
have the same opinion	لديه نفس الرأي
a good night's sleep	ليلة نوم هادئة
It's fun going to	من الممتع أن نذهب
do a journey	يقوم برحلة
A little bit late	متأخر قليلا

## Language Notes

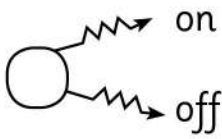
1



يركب ( تاكسي / سيارة )

ينزل من ( تاكسي / سيارة )

2



يركب ( أي وسيلة مواصلات اخري )

ينزل من ( أي وسيلة مواصلات اخري )

3

**in + time**

في خلال : يأتي بعدها وقت

This trains leaves **in 5 minutes**.

## Language Functions

Can I book a (single / return) ticket to ..... , please?

هل من الممكن حجز تذكرة ( ذهاب / ذهاب وعودة ) الي ..... , من فضلك ؟

Would you like first or second class ?

هل تريد الدرجة الاولى ام الثانية ؟

How long does the express train take?

كم المدة التي يستغرقها القطار السريع ؟

How much is that, please?

كم تكلفة التذكرة ؟

What time is the next train?

ما ميعاد القطار التالي ؟

Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

هل من الممكن اخباري بأي رصيف سيغادر القطار ؟

Sure , go on.

بالتأكيد تفضل .

I'd like the first class.

الدرجة الاولى من فضلك .



# Exercise on Vocabulary

7

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Mayar's cousin is going to live in Cairo, so she has bought a/an.....ticket.  
 (a) single (b) only (c) express (d) return
2. It's hot today, but the hotel room is cool because it has air.....  
 (a) conditioning (b) condensation (c) communication (d) cleaning
3. We love to watch the beautiful..... from the train windows.  
 (a) tickets (b) journey (c) station (d) scenery
4. We took a.....to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.  
 (a) train (b) bicycle (c) ferry (d) car
5. Do you want to catch the stopping train or the.....train.  
 (a) express (b) platform (c) carriage (d) pavement
6. We didn't have much money so we bought .....class tickets.  
 (a) first (b) express (c) stopping (d) economy
7. What is the..... of the number 10 bus?  
 (a) arrival (b) destination (c) meeting (d) stop
8. The tourist ..... a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the hotel.  
 (a) got on (b) got out off (c) got into (d) got off
9. My uncle will book a ticket in the ..... train as it is comfortable.  
 (a) sleep (b) asleep (c) sleepy (d) sleeper
10. We took a ..... to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.  
 (a) train (b) bicycle (c) ferry (d) car
11. Some students work in the holidays to .....some money.  
 (a) spend (b) lose (c) give (d) earn
12. We love to watch the beautiful ..... from the train's windows.  
 (a) scenery (b) picture (c) journey (d) station
13. Travelling by train is great way to see the ..... of a country.  
 (a) journey (b) scenery (c) tickets (d) station

14. He booked a .....to Aswan as he decided to return to Cairo by car.  
(a) one (b) two (c) single (d) return
15. As there was no bridge, we took a ..... to cross the river.  
(a) train (b) bicycle (c) ferry (d) car
16. The hotel room was cool because it has air .....  
(a) mail (b) communication (c) conditioning (d) cleaning
17. This trains leaves .....5 minutes.  
(a) of (b) in (c) on (d) at
18. How .....is this ticket, please? - It's 20 pounds.  
(a) often (b) long (c) many (d) much
19. How ..... does the express train take?  
(a) along (b) much (c) long (d) often
20. Before you .....a decision, you should ask your parents' opinions.  
(a) go (b) do (c) make (d) buy

## Exercise on Language functions

### 2) Finish the following dialogue:

A man is buying a ticket at a train station.

**Man** : Good morning. 1.....

**Assistant** :To Luxor? Of course. 2.....?

**Man** :A return, please. I'm coming back on Tuesday

**Assistant** :That's LE100.The next train leaves in 30 minutes.

**Man** : 3.....?

**Assistant** :The train leaves from platform 2.

**Man** : 4.....





# Grammar in Brief

1

## Will + inf

يستخدم في المستقبل للتعبير عن :

### Usage

- ١- قرار سريع      ٢- تنبأ بدون دليل      ٣- حقيقة مستقبلية      ٤- وعد  
٥- عرض      ٦- تهديد      ٧- طلب      ٨- مع قاعدة if

### Key words

#### يستخدم مع هذه الكلمات

I hope	أنا أتمنى	I expect	أنا أتوقع
I think	أنا أعتقد	soon	قريباً
I promise	أنا أعد	tomorrow	غداً
I'm sure	أنا متأكد	in the future	في المستقبل

ex

- It is hot here. I **will open** the window.      - I think he **will succeed**.  
- Heba **will be** 12 tomorrow.      - Be quiet or I **will tell** your father.  
- If he studies hard, he **will get** a high mark.

2

## be going to + inf

يستخدم في المستقبل للتعبير عن :

### Usage

- ١- خطة      ٢- نية      ٣- قرار      ٤- تنبأ بدليل

### Key words

#### يستخدم مع هذه الكلمات

I've intended to	أنا نويت	intention	نية
I have planned to	أنا خططت	plan	خطة
I have decided to	أنا قررت	decision	قرار

ex

- I **am going to** visit my uncle. It's my plan.      - Look out! He **is going to** fall.  
- It's cloudy. It's **going to** rain.      - He **is going to** buy a phone. He has intended.

3

## am/is/are+ ing

يستخدم في المستقبل للتعبير عن :

### Usage

- حدث مستقبلي تم الترتيب له مسبقا ( حدث جزء من الترتيب في المضارع أو الماضي )

### Key words

يستخدم مع هذه الكلمات

have arranged to	أنا رتبت	It's arranged	انه شيء مرتب
have prepared to	أنا أعددت	have organised	تم تنظيمه

ex

- I **am travelling** to Aswan tomorrow .I have bought the ticket.
- He **is meeting** his uncle at the airport tomorrow. It's arranged

4

## present simple(v/v+s)

يستخدم في المستقبل للتعبير عن :

### Usage

- مواعيد ثابتة وبرامج رسميه ( مواعيد مواصلات / افلام سينما / مسرح / برامج )

### Key words

يستخدم مع هذه الكلمات

timetable	جدول مواعيد	.....starts.....at	يبدأ في
.....leaves.....at	يغادر في	.....arrives....at	يصل في

ex

- The train **leaves** at 6 p.m.
- The film **starts** at 7 o'clock.
- Our bus **arrives** at 9 a.m.
- This program **ends** at 5o'clock.

## Notes

- الصفات الشخصية الدائمة (طويل- قصير- ذكي) لا تعتبر دليل ونستخدم معها **Will + inf**

- He is clever. He **will pass** the exam.

- الصفات المؤقتة (مريض- حزين- سعيد) تعتبر دليل ونستخدم معها **be going to + inf**

- They are tired after the match. I think they **are going to take** a rest.



**Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:**

1. There are many clouds in sky . ( going )  
.....
2. The time of the train leaving is at 9:00 p.m. ( leaves )  
.....
3. I can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. ( look forward )  
.....
4. Hend planned to spend the weekend in Alexandria. ( going )  
.....
5. I've already arranged to visit the museum tomorrow. ( visiting )  
.....
6. He is going to invite his uncle to his birthday party. ( intend )  
.....
7. My father promised to buy me a new phone. ( will )  
.....
8. I've decided to travel abroad after university. ( going )  
.....
9. Everything is okay .We've arranged to go home. ( are )  
.....
10. It's Ahmed's plan to build a house with a garden. ( going )  
.....
11. I'm going to stay in this hotel. ( plan )  
.....
12. It's my intention to wear this jacket for the party. ( intend )  
.....
13. I've just decided to open the door. ( will )  
.....
14. Our train is at 9 a.m. ( leave )  
.....
15. I have arranged to fly to London tomorrow. I have ( flying )  
bought tickets  
.....

# Unit 11 Review

## Main Voc

Lung disease	مرض في الرئة	physical	بدني
organ	عضو في الجسم	blood	الدم
drugs	مخدرات	die from	يموت من
cough	يكح / كحة	refuse	يرفض
persuade	يقنع	psychological	نفسي
damage	يتلف	encourage	يشجع
archaeologist	عالم اثار	check	يفحص / يراجع
pump	يضخ	look ill	يبدو مريضاً
breathe	يتنفس	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
rude to	وقح مع	make sure	يتأكد
seat	مقعد مثبت	have a cigarette	يدخن سيجارة
upset	منزعج	take photos	يلتقط صور

## Expressions & Prepositions

have an addiction	يدمن شئ
Social networking sites	مواقع التواصل
find about	يكشف
cut into body	يجري جراحة لجسم
fall asleep	يغلبه النوم
do very badly	يؤدي بطريقة سيئة
do an operation	يقوم بعملية جراحية
have an operation	تجري له عملية
regret about	يشعر بالندم علي
make a choice	يختار / يقرر
tea with sugar	شاي محلي بسكر
on your own	بمفردك



## Language Notes

1

هذه الكلمات يأتي بعدها الفعل مضاف له **ing** علي الرغم من وجود حرف الجر **to**

**addicted**

مدمن لـ

**look forward**

يتطلع إلي

**be / used**

معتاد أن ( في المضارع )

**in addition**

بالإضافة إلي

to +

ing

2

هذه الافعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضاف له **ing**

**enjoy**

يستمتع بـ

**spend + time**

يقضي وقت في فعل شئ

**stop**

يتوقف عن فعل الشئ

**regret**

يندم علي فعل شئ تم

ولكن لا حظ الفرق

**stop to + inf**

يتوقف لكي يفعل الشئ

**regret to + inf**

يندم علي انه سيفعل شئ لم يتم

## Language Functions

I think you should have + p.p

أنا أعتقد أنه كان يجب فعل .....

You shouldn't have + p.p

أنا أعتقد أنه كان لا يجب فعل

I really didn't want to + inf

أنا حقاً ما كنت أود أن أفعل

I wasn't interested , thanks.

لم أكن مهتم , شكرا

I really shouldn't have + p.p

أنا حقاً كان لا يجب علي فعل

## Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. 4. If you drink too much coffee, you may become ..... to it.  
☐ a invited      ☐ b dictated      ☐ c added      ☐ d addicted
2. You can play a sport instead ..... watching too much TV.  
☐ a off      ☐ b of      ☐ c at      ☐ d on
3. The..... is an organ which helps you breathe.  
☐ a foot      ☐ b lung      ☐ c heart      ☐ d brain
4. When a doctor cuts into your body to help you get better, then you have a/an.....  
☐ a addiction      ☐ b operation      ☐ c breath      ☐ d trip
5. Do people.....angry if you have done something good or something bad ?  
☐ a make      ☐ b give      ☐ c take      ☐ d get
6. You become.....to something when you are unable to stop doing it.  
☐ a addicted      ☐ b bored      ☐ c sad      ☐ d angry
7. Mona was.....when she said those unkind things to her sister.  
☐ a boring      ☐ b polite      ☐ c rude      ☐ d difficult
8. It is sad that some people become..... to computer games.  
☐ a upset      ☐ b successful      ☐ c hard      ☐ d addicted
9. I encouraged my younger brother ..... hard.  
☐ a work      ☐ b to work      ☐ c works      ☐ d working
10. I won't help you. You can do it .....your own.  
☐ a with      ☐ b of      ☐ c in      ☐ d on
11. I had just lost 5000 pounds and I felt very .....  
☐ a upset      ☐ b happy      ☐ c excited      ☐ d relaxed
12. He says unkind things. He is so .....  
☐ a ill      ☐ b rude      ☐ c intelligent      ☐ d smart
13. Mr.Ali died .....a lung disease at the age of thirty.  
☐ a in      ☐ b from      ☐ c off      ☐ d with
14. Ahmed is so sick. He needs to ..... an operation on his lungs.  
☐ a make      ☐ b have      ☐ c make      ☐ d do



15. He always ..... because he smokes heavily.  
 (a) sleeps (b) coughs (c) runs (d) makes
16. She wasn't hungry so she ..... a second piece of cake.  
 (a) baked (b) made (c) refused (d) wanted
17. He must have been sorry for ..... . He had problems with breathing.  
 (a) operation (b) addict (c) smoking (d) sleeping
18. He didn't study hard so he ..... very badly in the test.  
 (a) made (b) did (c) had (d) cooked
19. Some people need to ..... their social networking sites all the time. They think it's impossible to live without the internet.  
 (a) check (b) alone (c) lone (d) lonely
20. I finally managed to ..... my father to let me go out with my friends.  
 (a) refuse (b) cough (c) persuade (d) damage

## Exercise on Language functions



**Write what you would say in each of the following situations :**

1- Your friend shouted at her little sister.

.....

2- You regretted wasting too much time watching TV.

.....

3- Your friend didn't pass the exam because he didn't study at all.

.....

4- Your friend is addicted to drinking coffee.

.....

5- Ask your friend about his opinion about using social media.

.....

6- You are asked about the disadvantages of using social media.

.....



# Grammar in Brief

1

## must have + p.p

تعبر عن التأكيد والا ستنتاج القوي المثبت في الماضي:

### Usage

### Key words

يستخدم هذه الكلمات للتأكد

I feel sure	أنا متأكد	surely	بالتأكيد
I feel certain	أنا متأكد	definitely	بالتأكيد
certainly	بالتأكيد	I'm sure	أنا متأكد

ex

- Mona looks very happy. She **must have** done well in the exam..
- You **must have** seen Omar at school yesterday. You sat next to him!.
- There's no train to Omar's village. He **must have** taken the bus.

2

## can't have + p.p

تعبر عن التأكيد والا ستنتاج القوي المنفي في الماضي (مستحيل):

### Usage

### Key words

يستخدم هذه الكلمات للتأكد المنفي

I feel sure + نفي	أنا متأكد	surely/ definitely + نفي	بالتأكيد
I feel certain + نفي	أنا متأكد	I'm sure + نفي	أنا متأكد
certainly + نفي	بالتأكيد	impossible	مستحيل

ex

- This man knew us well. He **can't have** been a stranger.
- Mona looks sad. She **can't have** done well in the exam..
- Asmaa's bag was at school. She **can't have** left it at home.



3

## might have + p.p

تعبر عن عدم التأكد في الماضي:

### Usage

يستخدم هذه الكلمات لتدل على عدم التأكد

### Key words

perhaps / likely	محتمل	I don't think	لا اعتقد
It is probable	من المحتمل	I don't know	لا اعرف
It is possible	انه من الممكن	I'm not sure / certain	لست متأكد

ex

- Ali's arm hurts. He **might have** broken it. = **Perhaps** Ali broke his arm.
- **I'm not sure** that he was at home. = He **might have** been at home.
- **I don't think** he fed the pets. = He **might have** fed the pets.

4

## should have + p.p

كان من المفترض فعل شيء ( ولكن لم يحدث )

### Usage

تدخل علي جملة منفية

ex

- We lost the start of the show. We didn't come earlier. (should)
- We lost the start of the show. We **should have** come earlier.

5

## shouldn't have + p.p

كان من المفترض عدم فعل شيء ( ولكنه حدث )

### Usage

تدخل علي جملة مثبتة

ex

- You ate Ahmed's cake. (shouldn't...)
- You **shouldn't have** eaten Ahmed's cake.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I am sure that he travelled by bus. ( must )  
.....
2. I bought an old car but I regret. ( shouldn't )  
.....
3. Sami was cold last night. He wore a coat. ( must )  
.....
4. Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. ( might )  
.....
5. It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is ( can't )  
in Paris.  
.....
6. I can't remember if I saw that film or not. ( might )  
.....
7. Nawal fell asleep on the bus home. I'm sure she was ( must )  
tired.  
.....
8. I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. ( shouldn't )  
.....
9. Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with ( might )  
our homework.  
.....
10. I'm not sure where Tarek is. Perhaps he's in the park. ( might )  
.....
11. I must have left my notebook at home. ( sure )  
.....
12. His car wasn't there. I think he left. ( might )  
.....
13. I'm sure that I have seen him in the party ( must )  
.....
14. The teacher was angry because she didn't do her ( should )  
homework yesterday.  
.....



# Unit 12 Review

## Main Voc

boots	حذاء برقبة	mechanic	الميكانيكي
building	مبني	metro line	خط المترو
cleaner	عامل نظافة	nursing	تمريض
electrician	كهربائي	passengers	ركاب
especially	خاصة	pilot	طيار
experience	خبرة	police officer	شرطي
farming	زراعة	bike catcher	منتشل الدراجات
firefighter	رجل مطافي	technician	شخص فني
fix	يصلح	skills	مهارات
helmet	خوذة	station manager	مدير محطة قطار
industry	صناعة	technical schools	مدارس تقنية
manual	يدوي	ticket inspector	مفتش المحطة

## Expressions & Prepositions

In the middle of	في منتصف
have problems	لديه مشاكل
General education	التعليم العام
such an exciting film	مثل هذا الفيلم الشييق
on th metro line	علي خط المترو
part of a team	جزء من فريق
look out for	يحذر من
around Egypt	في جميع انحاء مصر
Keep ... safe	يحافظ علي سلامة
break down	يتعطل
Sixty percent of	ستون بالمائة من
give an example	يعطي مثلاً

## Language Notes

1

**Keep + obj + adj**

يحافظ .....

A station manager's job should **keep** everyone **safe** in the railway station.

2

**something + adj**

غالبا يأتي بعدها الصفة وليس قبلها

There is never a day without a problem! You could lose **something important**.

3



يعمل لصالح ....

يعمل علي / ينفذ

4

**adverb + adj**

تأتي هذه الظروف قبل الصفات لتقوية معناها

للغاية extremely / حقا really / جدا very / الي حد ما quite

## Language Functions

What do you think of.....?

ماذا تعتقد في .....

What is your opinion about .....

ما رأيك في .....

Could you give me your opinion of ...?

هل ممكن تعطيني رأيك في .....

- I think it is **very** nice.

انا أعتقد انها جميلة جدا .

- It is **extremely** important.

انها مهمة للغاية.

- I think it is **really** interesting.

اعتقد انها شيقة حقا.

- It is **quite** good.

انها جيده الي حد ما .



## Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The ticket.....checks that you have paid when you go on a train.  
☐ a manager      ☐ b cleaner      ☐ c inspector      ☐ d waiter
2. We asked the.....to bring us some water at the restaurant.  
☐ a mechanic      ☐ b baker      ☐ c waiter      ☐ d doctor
3. The.....advised the driver to take care of his car.  
☐ a doctor      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c waiter      ☐ d inspector
4. If you are.....of something,you are pleased because it's good.  
☐ a afraid      ☐ b angry      ☐ c proud      ☐ d fond
5. A.....is where you get on and off a train.  
☐ a pavement      ☐ b platform      ☐ c carriage      ☐ d theatre
6. Egypt can be .....hot in August.  
☐ a special      ☐ b specialized      ☐ c especially      ☐ d excellent
7. My uncle is the ..... of a factory. He gives instructions to the workers.  
☐ a captain      ☐ b manager      ☐ c mechanic      ☐ d secretary
8. It is hot today. It must be about forty.....  
☐ a degrees      ☐ b dots      ☐ c metres      ☐ d marks
9. You ask for a / an ..... when a car or a machine breaks down.  
☐ a cleaner      ☐ b manager      ☐ c inspector      ☐ d mechanic
10. We need a bike ..... to take my bike out of the river.  
☐ a pilot      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c electrician      ☐ d catcher
11. This machine doesn't work well! Please call a / an .....  
☐ a technician      ☐ b officer      ☐ c teacher      ☐ d artist
12. Motorcycle riders should wear a ..... to protect their heads.  
☐ a shirt      ☐ b sock      ☐ c helmet      ☐ d jacket
13. We need a mechanic because our car.....and stopped working .  
☐ a broke out      ☐ b broke down      ☐ c broke out      ☐ d broke
14. Making small hand-made models needs .....skill.  
☐ a industry      ☐ b electric      ☐ c nursing      ☐ d manual

## Final Revision

15. Ramy had some ..... because he travels a lot.  
(a) experience (b) industry (c) experiment (d) farming
16. Seham has ..... with her new phone. It doesn't make video calls.  
(a) skills (b) films (c) problems (d) helmets
17. Cigarettes are very bad ..... your health.  
(a) at (b) with (c) in (d) for
18. I'm very.....to be Egyptian.  
(a) sorry (b) afraid (c) proud (d) sad
19. My captain.....me not to swim in the dangerous river.  
(a) encouraged (b) warned (c) invited (d) kept
20. Please look ..... this rock. It may fall at any moment.  
(a) out for (b) out of (c) out (d) for

## Exercise on Language functions

### 2. Finish the following dialogue:

**Asmaa** :What's the most important part of a station manager's job?

**Manager** :I think it's to .....

**Asmaa** :.....?

**Manager** :There is never a day without a problem. Sometimes I have small problems, for example, a person loses something important .

**Asmaa** :What would you say to someone who wants to become a station manager?

**Manager** :.....

**Asmaa** :Well, you're right.It's interesting. ....  
.....?

**Manager** :I advise station managers to be patient and active.

**Asmaa** : Thanks for your time.





# Grammar in Brief

## Reported speech

للتحويل من المباشر إلى الغير مباشر نتبع الخطوات الآتية:

ما قبل  
الأقواس

### الجملة الخبرية

جملة تبدأ بفعل

١- الفاعل ( المتكلم ) يبقى كما هو

٢- يحول فعل القول كالآتي:

said ----- said  
say /says ----- say /says  
said to ----- told  
say to/says to ----- tell/tells

٣- المفعول ( المخاطب ) يبقى كما هو

### الجملة الامرية

جملة تبدأ بفعل أو **Don't** أو **Never**

١- الفاعل ( المتكلم ) يبقى كما هو

٢- يحول فعل القول كالآتي:

asked ----- طلب  
warned ----- حذر  
advised ----- نصح  
ordered ----- أمر

٣- المفعول ( المخاطب ) يبقى كما هو

الأقواس

٤- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ

**that**

٤- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ

إذا بدأت الجملة بفعل **to** -----  
**Don't** أو **Never** **not to** -----

٥- الضمائر يتم تحويلها حسب المتكلم والمخاطب وغالبا تكون كالآتي

قبل الاسم ( صفة ملكية ) نص الجملة ( ضمير مفعول ) أول الجملة ( ضمير فاعل )

I. → he / she me. → him / her my. → his / her  
you. → he / she / I you. → him / her / me your. → his / her / my  
we. → they us. → them our. → their

٦- الأزمنة تحول إلى الماضي بشرط أن يكون فعل القول ماضي / الماضي البسيط يتحول لماضي تام

٦- تحذف كلمة please إن وجدت .

٧- يتم تحويل التعبيرات الآتية:

this → that here → there today → that day yesterday → the day before  
these → those now → then tonight → that night last week → the week before  
tomorrow → the following day

## Notes

- عند وجود هذه الكلمات في الغير مباشر نستخدم **would + inf** أو **was/were going to**

- the following day - the next week - the day after - the week before

- عند وجود هذه الكلمات في الغير مباشر نستخدم **had + p.p**

- the day before - the previous day - the week before - the previous week

## Exercise on Grammar



### Read and correct the underlined words:

1. "You mustn't smoke." Ahmed said to Hany. ( advised )  
.....
2. "Where did you buy that shirt?" he said to me. ( asked )  
.....
3. "Don't play in the street," Our father said to us. ( warned )  
.....
4. "Breathe in",the doctor said. ( told )  
.....
5. " Keep working". Said the teacher to the class. ( encouraged )  
.....
6. "Learn how to cook.",Leila's mother said. (Leila's mother told her)  
.....
7. "I work in an office". (The cleaner told me)  
.....
8. "Stand up, please," the teacher said to Ali. ( ordered )  
.....
9. "Look out,Ahmed! A car is coming," Nabil said. ( warned )  
.....
10. The teacher ordered me to stand up. ( ordered )  
.....
11. "You must stop smoking!" the doctor said to Hatem. ( advised )  
.....
12. "Don't touch the snake," Mona said to Ola. ( warned )  
.....
13. "Please don't be late," the teacher said to me. ( advised )  
.....
14. Salah said " I'll take the first train to Aswan." ( that )  
.....
15. Mai said to her brother " Be quiet, please." ( going )  
.....



# Unit 13 Review

## Main Voc

shooting stars	الشهب	explain	يشرح
solar system	النظام الشمسي	fact file	ملف حقائق
disappear	يختفي	freezing	شديد البرودة
step back	يرجع إلى الوراء	likely	على الأرجح
telescope	تلسكوب	meteorite	نيزك
turn	دكرة - يدكر	minus	علامة ناقص
wonder	تساءل	astronomy	علم الفلك
working hours	ساعات العمل	mostly	في الغالب
polite	مذهب	notice	يلاحظ
relative	قريب ( من العائلة )	observatory	مرصد فلكي
round	مستدير	burn	يشتعل
shine	تسطع - تضيئ	planet	كوكب

## Expressions & Prepositions

turn around at .....	تدور بسرعة .....
Are you following me?	هل تتابعني ؟
feel the earth turn	يشعر ان الارض تدور
change its size	تغيير حجمها
for so long	لفترة طويلة جدا
It's your turn to.....	جاء دورك لكي .....
wait for	ينتظر من أجل
fall onto the earth	يسقط علي كوكب الارض
around 123 degrees	حوالي 123 درجة
1000 times bigger	اكبر بألف مرة
according to	طبقاً ل
different shapes	اشكال مختلفة

## Language Notes

1

let + obj + inf

يدع / يترك .....

Let me **speak** to your teacher and we'll see what we can do about it.

2

It's + a + adj + اسم مفرد

يأتي قبل الصفة **a** أو **an** اذا اتى بعدها اسم مفرد فقط

It's **a** beautiful **thing** to see! - It was **an** interesting **lesson**.

3

لاحظ الفرق في الكلمات الاتية

planet كوكب - plant نبات / wonder يتساءل - wander من العجائب  
دور - يستدير turn - يحترق burn / درجة degree - يوافق agree

## Language Functions

Could you please explain to me.....?

هل من الممكن أن تشرح لي لماذا ....؟

I wonder if you could tell me what .....?

اتساءل ان امكن ان تخبرني .....؟

I'd like to know if .....

اريد ان اعرف اذا .....

Do you think we could.....?

هل تعتقد انه يمكننا .....؟

Will/Would/Could you..., please?

هل من الممكن ان .....من فضلك ؟

Sure. / Certainly, / Yes, of course

عند الموافقة .

Well, I'm afraid, ..... - Well, the problem

عند الرفض .

-Sorry, but.....



## Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. 1.A/An..... is a building from which scientists watch space.  
☐ a skyscraper    ☐ b observatory    ☐ c hospital    ☐ d post office
2. When you make something easy to understand, then you..... it.  
☐ a freeze    ☐ b explain    ☐ c turn    ☐ d wonder
3. Earth is one of eight..... in the solar system.  
☐ a stars    ☐ b shooting stars    ☐ c moons    ☐ d planets
4. Hassan is very interested in space and wants to be an.....  
☐ a engineer    ☐ b astronomer    ☐ c accountant    ☐ d actor
5. A ..... star is a piece of rock that moves quickly through space.  
☐ a flying    ☐ b hitting    ☐ c shooting    ☐ d picking
6. The teacher wanted us to..... how the earth goes around the sun.  
☐ a explain    ☐ b advise    ☐ c regret    ☐ d control
7. .... is the study of the stars.  
☐ a Astrology    ☐ b Archaeology    ☐ c Astronomy    ☐ d Biology
8. The ..... came from space and landed in the sea.  
☐ a monument    ☐ b mountain    ☐ c meteorite    ☐ d minaret
9. A ..... a small piece of rock that is travelling through space.  
☐ a solar system    ☐ b shooting star    ☐ c moon    ☐ d planet
10. The sun is the only ..... in our solar system.  
☐ a moon    ☐ b star    ☐ c planet    ☐ d plane
11. It's not ..... to talk with your mouth full of food.  
☐ a sad    ☐ b round    ☐ c polite    ☐ d fast
12. The scientist said that clouds were made of tiny ..... of ice and water.  
☐ a pieces    ☐ b spaces    ☐ c spices    ☐ d peace
13. I'm waiting ..... my father to take me home.  
☐ a about    ☐ b in    ☐ c to    ☐ d for
14. When the sun shines on the moon, it is very hot. It's around 123.....  
☐ a sizes    ☐ b rocks    ☐ c degrees    ☐ d shapes

## Final Revision

15. A shooting star usually .... and disappears before it falls onto the earth.  
a turns      b travels      c burns      d freezes
16. Whe the sun ....., turn off this light.  
a steps back      b notices      c goes down      d shines
17. We need a ..... to see far objects.  
a telescope      b glass      c meteorite      d planet
18. A shooting star usually burns before it..... onto the Earth.  
a falls      b feels      c fills      d fails
19. A/ An ..... is a person who studies planets and stars.  
a artist      b engineer      c astronomer      d relative
20. We liked the lesson because it is ..... .  
a round      b boring      c interesting      d polite

## Exercise on Language functions



**Write what you would say in each of the following situations :**

1- You want to know why you can't feel the earth turn.

.....

2- You want to know what a star is made of. Ask your science teacher

.....

3- Your friend wants to know why he can't feel the earth turn..

.....

4- You don't know if the sun is a star or a planet .

.....

5- Your sister don't know what most stars are made of.

.....

6- You are asked if all the planets have moons.

.....





# Grammar in Brief

## Reported speech

للتحويل من المباشر إلى الغير مباشر نتبع الخطوات الآتية:

### جملة استفهامية «أداة استفهام»

جملة تبدأ بأداة استفهام

١- الفاعل ( المتكلم ) يبقى كما هو

٢- يحول فعل القول said/said to كالآتي:  
يمكن يأتي بعدها مفعول ----- asked  
لا يأتي بعدها مفعول ----- wondered  
لا يأتي بعدها مفعول ----- wanted to know

٣- المفعول ( المخاطب ) يبقى كما هو

### جملة استفهامية «هل»

جملة تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص

١- الفاعل ( المتكلم ) يبقى كما هو

٢- يحول فعل القول said/said to كالآتي:  
يمكن يأتي بعدها مفعول ----- asked  
لا يأتي بعدها مفعول ----- wondered  
لا يأتي بعدها مفعول ----- wanted to know

٣- المفعول ( المخاطب ) يبقى كما هو

٤- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بنفس الاداة الموجودة

**Wh**

بعد حذف الاقواس نبدأ بالفاعل

٤- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ

**if / whether**

بعد حذف الاقواس نبدأ بالفاعل

٥- الضمائر يتم تحويلها حسب المتكلم والمخاطب ( مثل الجملة الخبرية )

٦- الأزمنة تحول الى الماضي بشرط ان يكون فعل القول ماضي .

- يتم حذف **do / does** واستبدالها بـ ( فعل ماض + فاعل )

- يتم حذف **did** واستبدالها بـ ( تصريح ثالث + **had** + فاعل )

٧- يتم تحويل التعابير ( مثل الجملة الخبرية ):

## Notes

- إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع لا يتم تحويل الأزمنة

- Sara says to Mai "Where is your school ?"

- Sara asks Mai Where her school is .

- Saeed says to Asmaa "What food does your father like ?"

- Saeed asks Asmaa What food her father likes.

- الجملة الاستفهامية في غير المباشر تتحول الى جملة خبرية لذلك تنهي بـ ( . ) .

- Ahmed said to Yousry " Why are you late?"

- Ahmed asked Yousry why he was late.

## Exercise on Grammar



### Read and correct the underlined words:

1. "Will you finish your homework before dinner" (Kareem asked his sister)  
.....
2. "When will you return from Paris,?" ( My wife asked )  
.....
3. "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?" ( I asked )  
.....
4. "Are you an astronomer ?" The students asked the ( if ) professor.  
.....
5. "Where are you going on holiday in the summer ?" I ( he ) asked Maher.  
.....
6. "What are you doing ?" I asked Rofaida. (was)  
.....
7. "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?" (I asked)  
.....
8. What's the name of the biggest city of Egypt? ( like to know )  
.....
9. "Where is the bank?" I said to Amin. ( I asked )  
.....
10. "Stand up." the teacher said to me. ( ordered )  
.....
11. "You must stop smoking!" the doctor said to Hatem. ( advised )  
.....
12. "Don't touch the snake," Mona said to Ola. ( warned )  
.....
13. "Please don't be late," the teacher said to me. ( advised )  
.....
14. Emad asked Ahmed to bring him a cup of tea. ( said to..... )  
.....
15. Emad asked Ahmed if he had seen Tarek. ( said to..... )  
.....



# Unit 14 Review

## Main Voc

original	أصلي	damage	تلف
remind	يذكر	dome	قبة
ruler	حاكم	earthquake	زلزال
statue	تمثال	fantastic	عظيم
temple	معبد	fountain	نافورة
the Sphinx	أبو الهول	international	عالمي
citadel	قلعة	man-made	من صنع البشر
tunnel	نفق	marble	رخام
traditional	تقليدي	minaret	مئذنة
decorate	يزين	monument	معلم تذكاري
waterfall	شلال	natural	طبيعي
wonders	عجائب	oasis	واحة

## Expressions & Prepositions

vote on	يدلي بصوته
That's exactly how I feel.	هذا ما اشعر به تماماً
go over a cliff	يندفع من أعلي منحدر
keep ..... out	يبقي بعيداً
do a test	يؤدي اختبار
up to a point	الي درجة معينة
have a point	لديه وجهة نظر صحيحة
I totally disagree	انا ارفض تماماً
is still standing	لا يزال قائماً
along the river	علي امتداد النهر
over the last ten years	خلال العشر سنوات السابقة.
stay on the list	يبقي في القائمة

## Language Notes

1

**take + time + to + inf**

يأخذ (مدة) لكي .....

It **took** ten years **to** complete the fountains and gardens around it.

2

**such as / like**

مثل / يحب - مثل - مشابه - يشبه

Natural wonders should be on the list, **such as** the Wadi Rayyan waterfalls.

3

**exactly / totally / completely**

هذه الكلمات تأتي قبل الفعل الاساسي وبعد فعل يكون لتقوية الفعل

I'm afraid I **totally** disagree. / That's **exactly** how I feel.

I feel **completely** the opposite. / - I'm afraid I **totally** disagree.

## Language Functions

What do you think of.....?

ما رأيك في .....

How do you feel about.....?

ماهو شعورك تجاه .....

Do you agree .....

هل تتفق مع .....

I couldn't agree with you more.

لا أستطيع أتفق معك أكثر من ذلك.

That's (exactly) how I feel.

هذا ما أشعر به تماماً.

You have a point there.

نعم لديك وجهة نظر في ذلك.

I'm afraid I (totally) disagree.

أخشي أنني لاأتفق تماماً.

I feel completely the opposite.

أشعر تماماً عكس ذلك.



## Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Is Lake Nasser natural or is it..... ?  
☐ a modern      ☐ b traditional      ☐ c man-made      ☐ d personal
2. I ..... his name and thought he was called Tim instead of Tom  
☐ a misread      ☐ b printed      ☐ c redid      ☐ d reread
3. The top of a building that is in the shape of half a ball is called.....  
☐ a minaret      ☐ b monument      ☐ c marble      ☐ d dome
4. A new.....of wonders has been written.  
☐ a menu      ☐ b list      ☐ c article      ☐ d message
5. The canal is not natural. It is.....  
☐ a made      ☐ b man-made      ☐ c build      ☐ d building
6. The Taj Mahal has four tall .....  
☐ a minarets      ☐ b monuments      ☐ c fountains      ☐ d houses
7. The Taj Mahal is a ..... in India.  
☐ a monument      ☐ b minute      ☐ c moment      ☐ d river
8. We visited Cairo and saw some famous paintings in the art .....  
☐ a gallery      ☐ b pyramid      ☐ c fountain      ☐ d castle
9. The Sphinx is a famous .....many tourists visit it.  
☐ a fountain      ☐ b canal      ☐ c monument      ☐ d park
10. Ali didn't like the film. He thought it was .....  
☐ a exciting      ☐ b terrible      ☐ c interesting      ☐ d fantastic
11. There is a big ..... where the river goes over a cliff.  
☐ a water cycle      ☐ b waterfall      ☐ c water drop      ☐ d fall
12. This canal is man-made. It can't be .....  
☐ a physical      ☐ b cultural      ☐ c natural      ☐ d industrial
13. The Great Pyramid is..... on the list of the wonders of the ancient world.  
☐ a damaging      ☐ b still standing      ☐ c standing up      ☐ d telling
14. It took six years for us to ..... these decisions.  
☐ a play      ☐ b cook      ☐ c do      ☐ d make

## Final Revision

15. UNESCO helps to look ..... important sites.  
(a) at (b) up (c) after (d) up to
16. The Taj Mahal, with its beautiful white .....and four minarets, has been visited by millions of people since it was built.  
(a) dome (b) dot (c) wonder (d) statue
17. The water is pushed up into the air beautifully from this .....  
(a) mountain (b) dome (c) fountain (d) minaret
18. He is a thief and .....this reason I can't make him my friend.  
(a) in (b) with (c) of (d) for
19. ...., this statue has been damaged by pollution.  
(a) Fortunately (b) Unfortunately (c) Completely (d) Totally
20. I agreed with my friend up to.....  
(a) an opinion (b) a point (c) a message (d) a view

## Exercise on Language functions

### 2. Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Sally about wonders of the world.

**Ahmed** : Do you know the seven wonders of the world ?

**Sally** : ..... I know three of them "Great Pyramid of Giza, Colossus of Rhodes and Hanging Gardens of Babylon".

**Ahmed** : Great ! Have you ever visited any of them ?

**Sally** : .....

**Ahmed** : .....

**Sally** : I think the Great Pyramid is 4,500 years old

**Ahmed** : .....

**Sally** : Yes, I think the Bibliotheca Alexandria should be a part of a list of modern wonders of the world





# Grammar in Brief

## present perfect tense

يتكون المضارع التام في المبني للمعلوم من :

### Form

I / We / You / They →

**have**

التصريف الثالث للفعل

He / She / It →

**has**

يتكون المضارع التام في المبني للمجهول من :

### Passive

I / We / You / They →

**have been**

التصريف الثالث للفعل

He / She / It →

**has been**

يستخدم في المضارع التام للتعبير عن :

### Usage

٢- حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر الآن

١- حدث تم في الماضي وما زال مستمر

### يستخدم مع هذه الكلمات

### Key words

since

منذ ( بداية مدة )

yet

حتى الان ( جملة منفية )

for

لمدة ( مدة )

just

للتو

already

بالفعل

never

ابدا

ex

- I **have studied** English since 2012. ( been )
- English **has been studied** since 2012.

## Notes

- تأتي كلمة **yet** في النفي أو السؤال فقط .

- He **hasn't** cleaned his room **yet**.

- في السؤال نستخدم **have / has** ويأتي بعدهم الفاعل ثم الفعل في التصريف الثالث

- What **have** you **eaten** ?

## Exercise on Grammar



### Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Adam has won the first prize. ( The first prize )  
.....
2. They have planted trees along the river. ( Trees )  
.....
3. We have collected a lot of money for the charity. ( A lot of money )  
.....
4. Our school has won the competition. ( by )  
.....
5. She hasn't cooked lunch yet. ( Lunch )  
.....
6. Leila has made a cake for the family party. ( A cake )  
.....
7. Salwa hasn't done her homework yet. ( Salwa's homework )  
.....
8. They have painted the building. ( been )  
.....
9. My mother hasn't cleaned my room yet. ( been )  
.....
10. They have planted trees along the river. ( been )  
.....
11. Our school has won the competition. ( The competition )  
.....
12. The dishes haven't been washed by Nada . ( hasn't )  
.....
13. My mother has tidied her room. ( been )  
.....
14. Asmaa has already cooked lunch. ( been )  
.....



# Unit 15 Review

## Main Voc

advertise	يعلن	article	مقالة
development	تطور	privacy settings	إعدادات الخصوصية
nearly	تقريباً	recognise	يتعرف علي
allow	يسمح	repair	يصلح
interview	مقابلة شخصية	robber	لص
communicate	يتواصل	scam	مخادعه
manual workers	عمال يدوين	smart phone	تليفون ذكي
social media	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي	the latest	الاحدث
internet users	مستخدمي الانترنت	tourist	سائح
accident	حادث	transfer	ينقل مالا أو بضائع
company	شركة	magazine	مجلة
digital	رقمي	arrange	ينظم

## Expressions & Prepositions

love each other	يحب بعضنا البعض
do things	يفعل أشياء
go away	يذهب بعيدا
more and more	أكثر و أكثر
free of charge	مجاناً
come from	يأتي من
at the beginning	في البداية
make sure	يتأكد
make plans	يضع خططاً
make friends	يكون صداقات
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
take turns	يتناوب الادوار

## Language Notes

1

**steal - stole - stolen**

(يسرق شيء / سيارة / موبايل / محفظة .....

The police arrested the thief who **stole** my car.

2

**rob - robbed - robbed**

(يسرق مكان أو شخص ( احمد / بنك / محل.....

The police arrested the thief who **robbed** my the bank.

3

**adj+ing / adj+ ed**

الصفات المنتهية ب **ing** صفات سبب ( غالباً مع غير العاقل )  
الصفات المنتهية ب **ed** صفات نتيجة ( غالباً مع العاقل )

It sounds a very **exciting** job.  
Shahad is **interested** in reading stories.  
Reading stories is **interesting**

4

**on + media**

تأتي مع وسائل التواصل

on the internet / on a site / on TV

## Language Functions

Great! What else does it say ?

عظيم ! ماذا تقول عن ؟

Really ? Go on.

حقاً؟ استمر

How wonderful! Tell me more.

شئ رائع ! اخبرني المزيد

Then what happened ?

ثم ماذا حدث ؟

What happened after that ?

ماذا حدث بعد ذلك ؟



## Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. "....." means to move someone or something from one place to another.  
 (a) Transfer (b) Require (c) Advertise (d) Interview
2. We saw some famous paintings in the new art.....  
 (a) gallery (b) hospital (c) post office (d) bakery
3. The Sphinx is a famous.....that many people visit.  
 (a) a tower (b) monument (c) museum (d) gallery
4. Ramy's bike is broken.How can we.....it ?  
 (a) repaint (b) repair (c) repeat (d) rearrange
5. We need a computer to send.....  
 (a) telegram (b) an email (c) a message (d) a letter
6. The shop is .....for a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work there.  
 (a) advertising (b) arranging (c) writing (d) investing
7. This email asks for my computer password. It must be a .....  
 (a) score (b) skin (c) scam (d) scan
8. My brother broke his phone and needs someone to..... it.  
 (a) make (b) explain (c) repair (d) report
9. This book is..... I don't want to read it any more.  
 (a) special (b) excellent (c) terrible (d) greedy
10. The use of computers in the world of business is an important .....  
 (a) development (b) monument (c) government (d) accident
11. .... are ideas that we aren't sure about.  
 (a) monuments (b) volcanoes (c) developments (d) theories
12. I have ..... my money to Alexandria Bank.  
 (a) arranged (b) transferred (c) advertised (d) travelled
13. We are sisters so we should love each .....  
 (a) the others (b) another (c) other (d) the other
14. We bought a shirt but we didn't pay for these socks .They are .....  
 (a) expensive (b) free of charge (c) sure (d) scams

## Final Revision

15. Egypt has the highest number of internet ..... in the Arab world.  
(a) archaeologists (b) users (c) vets (d) nurses
16. Don't make friends ..... social media with people you don't know.  
(a) on (b) in (c) at (d) with
17. If you use social networking sites, use their privacy.....  
(a) network (b) scam (c) settings (d) interview
18. Workers who work with machines are faster than ..... workers.  
(a) menu (b) manual (c) social (d) digital
19. Internet privacy settings help you to be ..... from scams.  
(a) happy (b) strong (c) important (d) safe
20. My sister took a month to ..... these plans .  
(a) do (b) communicate (c) make (d) allow

## Exercise on Language functions

### 2. Finish the following dialogue:

Rehab is talking to Nesma about the internet.

**Rehab** : How often do you use internet ?

**Nesma** : .....

**Rehab** : Six hours a day! .....?

**Nesma** : Because I'm a designer and being online is part of my job.

**Rehab** : That's interesting! .....?

**Nesma** : No , I don't have problems with scams. I always use privacy settings.

**Rehab** : What advice you can give me to be safe online?

**Nesma** : .....





# Grammar in Brief

## Second conditional (if)

تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث غير محتمل الحدوث (منافي للواقع الحالي) في المضارع

### Form

**If**

V+ ed ماضي بسيط

would  
could  
might

مصدر

### Neg.

**If**

didn't + inf

would  
could not  
might

مصدر

- If....didn't + inf = Unless + past simple

If he didn't come here, he wouldn't enjoy. = Unless he came here, he wouldn't.....

## Notes

- يأتي بعد **Unless** إثبات دائما لأنها تعطي معنى النفي .
- نستخدم **If I were you, I'd** لاعطاء نصيحة بمعنى ( لو كنت مكانك , لفعلت..... )
- **If I were you, I would** go swimming .
- هذه التعبيرات متساوية في المعنى ( في جملة جواب الشرط ) .

would ( perhaps - possibly - probably ) = might

would be able to = could

would be impossible to = couldn't

- لإدخال **if** علي جملة نعكس معنى الجملة (النفي إثبات ) و ( الإثبات نفي ) .
- ما بعد **as/because** يكون فعل الشرط بعد **if** مع عكس الجملة ( النفي اثبات - والاثبات نفي )
- ما قبل **so/that's why** يكون فعل الشرط بعد **if** مع عكس الجملة ( النفي اثبات - والاثبات نفي )
- He speaks loudly **so** I don't understand his words. ( If )
- If he **didn't** speak loudly, I **would** understand his words.
- هذه الأفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة لا تتغير... **cut - put - hit - shut - read** .
- مضارع بسيط He reads a story. - ماضي بسيط He read a story.

## Exercise on Grammar



### Read and correct the underlined words:

1. His parents help him when he tells them about his problem. ( If )  
.....
2. I'm not taller so I'm not good at basketball. ( If )  
.....
3. If I see Sayed, perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. ( might )  
.....
4. She wants to buy a new car, but she doesn't have enough money. ( if )  
.....
5. If you didn't like watching matches, you could leave this room. ( Unless )  
.....
6. He doesn't understand the lesson so he can't answer questions. ( If )  
.....
7. Mona is clever. She gets high marks. ( If )  
.....
8. He speaks English well so he can communicate with tourists. ( Unless )  
.....
9. Mai can't call me because she doesn't have my number. ( If )  
.....
10. You should study hard. ( If )  
.....
11. She likes teaching , so she wants to be a teacher. ( If )  
.....
12. Mohamed is polite that's why his teachers love him. ( If )  
.....
13. I advise you to be patient . ( If )  
.....
14. Unless he grew vegetables, we would buy from the market. ( If )  
.....



# Unit 16 Review

## Main Voc

moral	مغزي	borrow	يستعير
prepare	يجهز	content	قانع - سعيد
refuse	يرفض	contents	محتويات
scared	خائف جدا / مذعور	enough	كاف
surprised	مندهش	escape	يهرب
terrible	فظيع	foolish	أحمق
adventure	مغامرة	invitation	دعوة
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	golden	ذهبي
upset	منزعج - قلق	goose	أوزة
wise	حكيم	grasshopper	جراد نطاط
wonderful	رائع	greedy	طماع
worried	مهموم / قلقان	message	رسالة

## Expressions & Prepositions

give advice	يعطي نصيحة
ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
prepare for	يستعد لـ
Pick up	يلتقط
get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه كاملة
as well as	بالإضافة إلى
make up	يؤلف
For nothing	بدون مقابل
Respond to	يستجيب لـ
make a discovery	يكشف / يصنع اكتشاف
go for a ride	يتجول / يذهب في جولة
have a baby	يرزق بطفل

## Language Notes

1

### Verbs + adj

هناك بعض الافعال يأتي بعدها صفة وليس ظرف مثل

feel / look / sound / be ( am - is - are - was - were ) / become / smell / taste / seem

Ahmed **looked** very **content** and **felt happy** because he got a good mark.

2

### news (n) / new (adj)

أخبار (تعامل معاملة المفرد) / جديد (صفة)

This was very good **news** for me. - The **news** is wonderful. (n)

This t-shirt is **new**. - I have a **new** camera. (adj)

3

### refuse to + inf

يرفض أن (تعطي معني النفي) وتساوي في المعني  
= **don't agree** = **don't accept**

- I **refuse** to think about winter **yet**.

- Ahmed **refused** to eat **anything**.

لاحظ ان كلمة **yet** و **any** تأتي في النفي و **refuse** تعطي معني النفي في الجملتين.

## Language Functions

Really ? I can't believe it!

حقاً لا استطيع أن أصدق ذلك!

How wonderful!

شئ رائع

Oh dear!

يا الهي

Oh , no !

اوه لا !

How terrible!

شئ فظيع !



# Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The.....is a common white water bird.  
 (a) grasshopper (b) goose (c) hen (d) ant
2. It's a good idea to ask a wise person for.....  
 (a) food (b) wonders (c) money (d) advice
3. If you have enough water, you are.....  
 (a) thirsty (b) not thirsty (c) not hungry (d) hungry
4. If you feel content, you are.....  
 (a) sad (b) angry (c) scared (d) happy
5. A story with a moral has a.....  
 (a) message (b) sad ending (c) happy ending (d) no ending
6. Don't be .....! You have already eaten a big ice cream.  
 (a) honest (b) greedy (c) hard working (d) kind
7. She is ..... he left nothing on the table for anyone to eat.  
 (a) greedy (b) nice (c) kind (d) excellent
8. It is a good idea to ask a ..... person for advice.  
 (a) wise (b) careless (c) greedy (d) foolish
9. A ..... is an insect that has long back legs for jumping and that makes short loud noises.  
 (a) duck (b) grasshopper (c) dolphine (d) goose
10. The ..... is the most important idea in a book , film or play.  
 (a) escape (b) invitation (c) adventure (d) message
11. She accepted his .....for lunch.  
 (a) discovery (b) invention (c) nature (d) invitation
12. Please, pick ..... this knife. It can hurt us.  
 (a) up (b) off (c) in (d) of
13. .... eating his meal, he drank all the juice.  
 (a) But (b) As (c) As well as (d) Because
14. The film's .....is that rich and poor are alike.  
 (a) massage (b) passage (c) message (d) mess

## Final Revision

15. She asked him to eat, but he ..... because he isn't hungry.  
a refused      b accepted      c surprised      d believed
16. I always ask him for advice because he is .....  
a scared      b content      c bad      d wise
17. When we got home, My mother was busy ..... dinner.  
a borrowing      b refusing      c preparing      d advising
18. I didn't pay money for this pen. I got it ..... from a friend.  
a with nothing      b for nothing      c in nothing      d nothing
19. When I was little, I used to eat from the rubbish bin . I was .....at the time.  
a greedy      b worried      c scared      d foolish
20. I like ..... films because they make me excited.  
a adventure      b birthday      c invitation      d advice

## Exercise on Language functions

### 2) Finish the following dialogue:

1- Your friend told you that he became the new manager.

.....

2- Your friend's father had a terrible accident.

.....

3- Your brother came first in the maths competition.

.....

4- Your friend is buying a new villa.

.....

5- Your friend Ahmed thinks that Al-Zamalek is the best team in the world. You don't think so.

.....

6- Your sister says that the food you both had was very tasty.

Express your agreement.

.....





# Grammar in Brief

## past perfect tense

يتكون الماضي التام في المبني للمعلوم من :

### Form

I / We / You / They →

**had**

التصريف الثالث للفعل

He / She / It →

### Usage

يستخدم في الماضي التام للتعبير عن :

- ١- حدث تم وانتهى قبل حدوث حدث آخر ( الماضي التام هو الحدث الاول )
- ٢- يأتي الماضي التام ( حدث أول ) مع زمن الماضي البسيط ( حدث ثاني )

### Key words

يستخدم مع هذه الكلمات

by the time	بحلول وقت	after	بعد
as soon as	بمجرد ان	before	قبل
until / till	حتى	when	عندما

## Time connectors

①

**After**

**As soon as** ماضي تام

**had + p.p**

حدث أول

**V + ed** ماضي بسيط

حدث ثاني

**After + ing** / ماضي تام **as soon as / after** ماضي بسيط

- He bought bread, then he went home. ( After / after )

After he had bought bread, he went home.

After buying bread, he went home.

He went home after he had bought bread.

②

**Before**

**By the time**

**V + ed** ماضي بسيط

حدث ثاني

**had + p.p** ماضي تام

حدث أول

**Before + ing** / ماضي بسيط **before / by the time / when** ماضي تام

## Final Revision

- He bought bread, then he went home. ( By the time / before )

By the time he went home, he had bought bread.

Before going home, he bought bread.

He had bought bread before he went home.

3

didn't + inf ماضي بسيط منفي    until till ماضي تام    had + p.p  
حدث ثاني    حدث أول

- He bought bread, then he went home. ( until )

He didn't go home until he had bought bread.

4

V + ed ماضي بسيط    as because ماضي تام    had + p.p  
حدث ثاني    حدث أول

Hamed was angry because he had lost his bag.

5

had + p.p ماضي تام    so that's why ماضي بسيط V + ed  
حدث أول    حدث ثاني

Hamed had lost his bag so he was angry.

6

By Before وقت محدد في العاضي    had + p.p ماضي تام  
حدث أول    حدث ثاني

- By 2019, I had read 3 stories.

- Before seven o'clock yesterday, I had done my homework.

## Exercises on Grammar

### Read and correct the underlined words:

3. We visited the museum then we went home. ( After )

.....

3. First, I finished my work, then I went to the club. ( until )

.....

3. After we had watched the match, we went home. ( until )

.....



4. First we booked the tickets. Then we went to the concert. (before )  
.....
5. I finished my homework, then I went to the park. (because)  
.....
6. When the winter came, ants had found enough food to eat. ( before )  
.....
7. I didn't try Chinese food before going to that restaurant. ( had never tried )  
.....
8. After we had visited the museum, we decided to have lunch. ( until )  
.....
9. After he had studied the lesson, he went out for a walk. ( until )  
.....
10. After Heba had lent me some money, I caught the bus to town. ( Before )  
.....
11. When I got to the cinema, the film had almost finished. ( after )  
.....
12. I couldn't get on the bus because I'd forgotten my money. ( so )  
.....
13. He wrote his book after he had become a millionaire. ( As soon as )  
.....
14. He joined the army after he had left school. ( until )  
.....
15. He worked as a waiter after he had lost his job. ( because )  
.....

# Unit 17 Review

## Main Voc

fossils	حفريات	bones	عظام
gas	غاز	catch	يلحق ب - يمسك
hippo	فرس النهر	cause	يسبب
hut	كوخ	cave	كهف
Ice Age	العصر الجليدي	clay	طين, صلصال
meteorite	نيزك	crocodile	تمساح
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	die out	ينقرض
rock	صخرة	disappear	يختفي
sew	يخيط	disease	مرض
space	فراغ	documentary	برنامج وثائقي
Stone Age	العصر الحجري	dust	تراب
theory	نظرية	erupt	يثور (بركان)

## Expressions & Prepositions

reason for = cause of	سبب لـ
catch a disease	يصاب بمرض
welcome to	مرحباً في
on the walls	علي الجدران
drive to	يوصل بالسيارة
catch animals	يصطاد حيوانات
make fire	يشعل نار
keep sheep	يربي أغنام
move around	يتجول
keep warm	يظل دافئاً
sew / make clothes	يخيط الملابس
with mouth open	أفواههم مفتوحة



# Language Notes

1

**sleep for + period**

ينام لمدة ..... ( ويأتي بعدها مدة زمنية )

Many boy lions **sleep for** twenty hours a day.

2

**sleep for longer than**

ينام لمدة اطول من .....

Boy lions **sleep for longer than** girl lions.

3

**run up to + ...km**

يجري بما يعادل ..... كيلومتر

Zebras can **run up to** 65 kilometres an hour.

4

**..... a / an .....**

تأتي قبل المدة ( ساعة / يوم / اسبوع ) بمعنى ( في أو كل )

Zebras can **run up to** 65 kilometres **an** hour.

## Language Functions

..... about ..... ago

منذ حوالي .....

..... may be ..... ago

ربما منذ .....

..... almost ( approximately ) .... ago

تقريباً منذ .....

In around .....

في حوالي عام .....

It was perhaps ..... When .....

ربما كانت ..... عندما .....

## Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. What was the..... of the accident ?  
☐ a reason      ☐ b cause      ☐ c ambulance      ☐ d building
2. We need to protect many of our animals if we don't want them to.....out.  
☐ a give      ☐ b take      ☐ c die      ☐ d live
3. "....." are ideas we are not sure about.  
☐ a Novels      ☐ b Threats      ☐ c Theories      ☐ d Stories
4. The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden.....on the beach.  
☐ a caves      ☐ b huts      ☐ c cars      ☐ d gardens
5. The hotel is the tallest.....in the city.  
☐ a tower      ☐ b building      ☐ c pyramid      ☐ d castle
6. The ..... came from space and landed in the sea.  
☐ a mountain      ☐ b monument      ☐ c meteorite      ☐ d minaret
7. People have used ..... to make cups for hundreds of years.  
☐ a stone      ☐ b clay      ☐ c straw      ☐ d sticks
8. When volcanoes ....., they put a lot of dust and gas in the atmosphere.  
☐ a interrupt      ☐ b erupt      ☐ c accept      ☐ d adapt
9. A lot of ancient mosques have ..... in the middle.  
☐ a temples      ☐ b fountains      ☐ c carriages      ☐ d hippos
10. An idea or set of ideas that is intended to explain something is called.....  
☐ a a disease      ☐ b a documentary      ☐ c a theory      ☐ d a rock
11. My grandmother taught me to.....She made beautiful clothes.  
☐ a see      ☐ b sew      ☐ c catch      ☐ d dust
12. It's illegal to ..... animals in this area.  
☐ a park      ☐ b talk to      ☐ c catch      ☐ d keep
13. Don't play with matches because you can ..... fire and hurt yourself.  
☐ a make      ☐ b disappear      ☐ c keep      ☐ d do
14. My father is a farmer. He ..... sheep and goats.  
☐ a welcomes      ☐ b drives      ☐ c moves      ☐ d keeps



- Preserved plants or animals that may be over 2 million years old are called .....
- (a) diseases (b) hippos (c) fossils (d) bones
16. This ..... is interesting. It talks about wild animals in forests.
- (a) email (b) documentary (c) theory (d) letter
17. The mixture of gases around the Earth is called the .....
- (a) atmosphere (b) rock (c) mountain (d) volcano
18. I went to look for a ..... in the island because I wanted a warm place to sleep.
- (a) mountain (b) rock (c) dust (d) cave
19. I could hear someone moving ..... upstairs.
- (a) along (b) with (c) around (d) from
20. Don't eat food with your ..... open. You should be polite.
- (a) mouth (b) nose (c) finger (d) eye

## Exercise on Language functions

**2** Write what you would say in each of the following situations :

1- Your friend believes that dinosaurs are still alive.

.....

2- Your friend wants to know when dinosaurs died out.

.....

3- A friend of yours says that the Stone Age was approximately 8000 years ago.

.....

4- You are asked how to keep yourself warm in winter.

.....

5- You ask your teacher when dinosaurs died out.

.....

6- You are asked about the age of your grandmother.

.....



# Grammar in Brief

## Third conditional (if)

تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث مستحيل أن يتغير لأنه تم في الماضي ( يعبر عن الندم )

### Form

**If**

**had + p.p** ماضي تام

**would  
could  
might**

**have + p.p**

- If....hadn't + p.p = Unless .....had + p.p

If he **hadn't** studied hard, he wouldn't have succeeded.

= **Unless** he **had** studied hard, he wouldn't have succeeded.

### Notes

- يأتي بعد **Unless** إثبات دائما لأنها تعطي معني النفي .

- هذه التعبيرات متساوية في المعني ( في جملة جواب الشرط ).

would ( **perhaps - possibly - probably** ) have + p.p = might have + p.p

would **have been able to + inf** = could have + p.p

would **have been impossible to + inf** = couldn't have + p.p

- اذا لم يأتي بعد **had** تصريف ثالث نستخدم الحالة ثانية.

If he **had** enough money اسم , he **would** buy a car. حالة ثانية

If he **had** taken a taxi , he **wouldn't have** missed the train. حالة ثالثة

- اذا لم يأتي بعد **would have** تصريف ثالث نستخدم الحالة ثانية.

- If I felt hungry, I **would have** a sandwich. حالة ثانية

- If I had been hungry, I **would have** eaten sandwich. حالة ثالثة





## Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I didn't have much money,so I didn't buy that expensive toy. ( If )  
.....
2. I was tired, so I didn't watch the documentary about dinosaurs. ( If )  
.....
3. I was tired, so I didn't watch the documentary about dinosaurs. ( If )  
.....
4. Because my father drove me to school,I arrived on time. ( If )  
.....
5. I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. ( if )  
.....
6. I was ill, so I didn't go to work. ( If )  
.....
7. I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive laptop. ( If )  
.....
8. If Sayed hadn't stayed out late with his friends, he wouldn't have seen the fire. (Unless)  
.....
9. Mr Samy fell down the stairs. He hurt his knee. ( If )  
.....
10. Shady didn't look where he was going. He crashed into a rubbish bin. ( If )  
.....
11. Unless she had left her coat in the restaurant, she wouldn't have lost it. ( If )  
.....
12. I didn't see Fady steal anything so I can't tell the shop assistant. ( If )  
.....

# Unit 18 Review

## Main Voc

percent	نسبة	diving	الغوص
protected	محمي	equipment	معدات
relief	راحة	excitement	اثارة - حمس
rough	خشن - فظ	flat	شقة - مسطح
Sailfish	سمكة الشراع	blog	مدونة
Shark	القرش	tortoise	سلحفاة برية
snorkelling	الغوص تحت الماء	goodness	طيبة قلب - صلاح
special	خاص	green turtles	سلحفاة مائية
spinach	سبانخ	group	مجموعة
stingray	سمكة الراي اللاسعة	instructor	معلم - مربى
coral reef	حاجز مرجاني	national park	حديقة عامه
wreck	حطام سفينة	papyrus	البردي

## Expressions & Prepositions

revise for	يراجع لـ
on a website	علي موقع الكتروني
by the sea	بجوار البحر
take a test	يؤدي امتحان
have a look	يلقي نظرة
have free time	لديه وقت فراغ
miss the bus	يفوته الاتوبيس
at the bottom of	في قاع
get behind	يختبئ خلف
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات
feel frightened	يشعر بالخوف
What a relief!	كم هذا مريح!



# Language Notes

1

**go + sports(ing)**

تأتي مع الرياضات المنتهية بـ **ing**.

I could **go diving** every day!

You could **go snorkelling** and you could still see a lot of sea life.

2

**play + sports**

تأتي مع الرياضات التي تلعب بالكرة.

He is **playing tennis** at the moment.

Mai can't **play hockey**.

3

**do + sports**

تأتي مع الرياضات العنيفة.

Rehab goes to club to **do karate**.

Asmaa **does judo** on Fridays .

## Language Functions

Phew!

صوت للتعبير عن الارتياح !

What a relief!

كم هذا مريح !

Thank goodness for that!

الحمد لله

Great!

عظيم !

I can't wait!

لا أستطيع الإنتظار !

I'm looking forward to that!

اتطلع لذلك !

## Exercise on Vocabulary



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Do you think we should.....the sea life in the Red Sea?  
☐ a protect      ☐ b attack      ☐ c avoid      ☐ d touch
2. A..... is a big,flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.  
☐ a shark      ☐ b whale      ☐ c stingray      ☐ d coral
3. Don't worry if you haven't swum before.The.....will show you what to do.  
☐ a doctor      ☐ b instructor      ☐ c tour guide      ☐ d professor
4. That book is 25 centimetres.....  
☐ a tall      ☐ b big      ☐ c wide      ☐ d deep
5. The groups of coral.....like plants.  
☐ a make      ☐ b give      ☐ c look      ☐ d take
6. The ..... showed us how to dive under water.  
☐ a hero      ☐ b interviewer      ☐ c instructor      ☐ d inventor
7. How many eggs do the farmer's chickens..... each day?  
☐ a lie      ☐ b give      ☐ c lay      ☐ d put
8. A farmer found that his goose had ..... a yellow egg.  
☐ a lid      ☐ b lie      ☐ c laid      ☐ d lay
9. They are ..... because they received the news of their success.  
☐ a scared      ☐ b corrupt      ☐ c distant      ☐ d content
10. A green.....is an animal which lives in or near water and has a thick shell covering its body.  
☐ a sailfish      ☐ b hippo      ☐ c turtle      ☐ d shark
11. It's important information! You must ..... notes.  
☐ a cook      ☐ b miss      ☐ c bake      ☐ d take
12. You can find out about many animals ..... this website.  
☐ a at      ☐ b of      ☐ c on      ☐ d from
13. I ..... frightened when they left me alone in the house.  
☐ a fell      ☐ b fall      ☐ c felt      ☐ d fail



- I was happy to see Asmaa's smile that gives me some ..... after the accident.
- (a) relief (b) excitement (c) equipments (d) jokes
15. Divers discovered the ..... of an old German ship.
- (a) attack (b) wreck (c) goodness (d) papyrus
16. We went ..... along the Red Sea.
- (a) skiing (b) climbing (c) snorkelling (d) shopping
17. Dolphins travel in small..... .
- (a) classes (b) teams (c) groups (d) pieces
18. Don't be too ..... she's only little! You should be kind to her.
- (a) lazy (b) good (c) friendly (d) rough
19. There are many clever students in our class. Thank ..... for that!
- (a) goodness (b) badness (c) diseases (d) sadness
20. Hana can ..... tennis with one hand.
- (a) run (b) go (c) play (d) do

## Exercise on Language functions

**2** Write what you would say in each of the following situations :

1- Your father tells you that your favourite team has won.

.....

2- Your teacher told you that you got the full mark in English.

.....

3- Your aunt tells you that she bought you a present.

.....

4- You hear that USA has found a medicine for Corona virus.

.....

5- It didn't rain in your birthday. Express relief.

.....

6- You are looking forward to success presents.

.....



# Grammar in Brief

## Conditionals (if)

تستخدم الحالة الأولى لتعبير عن إمكانية حدوث شيء في المستقبل:

1

**If**  
**Unless**

مضارع بسيط **V / V + s**

**will**  
**can**  
**may**

مصدر +

- **If....doesn't / don't + inf = Unless + v / v + s**

If he doesn't study hard, he will get a low mark. = Unless he studies hard,.....

- ممكن إستبدال **will** بـ فعل أمر مثبت أو منفي بـ **Don't**

Don't eat fast food **if** you want to be healthy.

**If** you see the thief , call the police.

- الحالة الأولى تدخل علي جملة في زمن المستقبل.

Don't shout at me or I will tell your father. ( If ) - If you shout, I'll tell your father.

تستخدم الحالة الثانية لتعبير عن عدم إمكانية حدوث شيء في المضارع :

2

**If**  
**Unless**

ماضي بسيط **V + ed**

**would**  
**could**  
**might**

مصدر +

**If** you see the thief , call the police.

- الحالة الثانية تدخل علي جملة في زمن المضارع.

I'm not taller so I'm not good at basketball. (If)

If I were taller , I would be good at basketball.

تستخدم الحالة الثالثة لتعبير عن إستحالة حدوث الشيء لأنه تم في الماضي :

3

**If**  
**Unless**

ماضي تام **had + p.p**

**would**  
**could**  
**might**

**have** + **p.p**

**If** you see the thief , call the police.

- الحالة الثالثة تدخل علي جملة في زمن الماضي.

I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. (If)

If I had recognised your cousin, I would have said hello.





**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Hala is very good at English,so she gets a good job in London. ( If )  
.....
2. I didn't take my photos because I didn't take my special camera. ( If )  
.....
3. If we don't go the sports club, we won't phone you. (unless )  
.....
4. You didn't revise well so you didn't get a high mark. ( If )  
.....
5. If he had met my boss, he would have got a good job. ( because )  
.....
6. If she had dried the water on the floor, she wouldn't have fallen off. ( so )  
.....
7. I had a map ,so we arrived easily. ( If )  
.....
8. Eat healthy food to be strong. ( If )  
.....
9. Mona was ill.That's why she didn't come to my birthday. ( If )  
.....
10. I'd like the boy more if he didn't cry ( unless )  
.....
11. You should listen to teachers in the classroom. ( If )  
.....
12. Make dinner or I will tell your father. ( Unless )  
.....
13. Stay here or you won't be safe. ( If )  
.....
14. If they didn't laugh at me, I would talk to them . ( so )  
.....



# Black Beauty

أهم ماورد من اسئلة الامتحانات السابقة وكتاب الـ

## Important Vocabulary

stone	حجارة / حصوة	wealthy	غني
passengers	مسافرون	write back	يرد علي الرسالة
breathe	يتنفس	troubles	متاعب
become old	يكبر في السن	rest	راحة / يستريح
delighted	مسرور	ill-looking	يبدو مريضاً
luggage	أمتعة ( شنط )	forehead	جبين / جبهة
cottage	كوخ	handsome	وسيم
extra	إضافي	trust	يثق / ثقة
usual speed	السرعة المعتادة	steal	يسرق
cough	يكح / كحة	behave	يتصرف
latest fashion	موضة حديثة	reins	لجام
recover	يتعافي	hire	يستأجر

## Critical Thinking Questions

1. In what ways was Earls Hall Park better than Birtwick Park? الي اي مدي كانت ايرلشال افضل من بيرتويك ؟

Earls Hall Park was much bigger than Birtwick Park and more modern. ايرلشال كانت اكبر بكثير و أحدث من بيرتويك.

2. Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not? هل تعتقد ان جينجر كانت علي صواب ان تبدأ بالركل ؟ لماذا ؟ لماذا لا ؟

Yes, because the reins were uncomfortable and hurt her. نعم كانت محقة لأن اللجام كان غير مريح و يؤذيها .

3. Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger? لماذا تعتقد ان ايرل سمايث قال انه ربما لا يحصل علي اموال كثيرة مقابل جينجر ؟

Because she was badly hurt. She also kicked and didn't do what owners asked. لأنها جرحت بطريقة سيئة و ايضا تركل ولا تنفذ ما يطلبه المالك.



4. Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

Because she became weak and thin and couldn't do work well.

لماذا تعتقد ان ان ملاك جينجر يدفعوا اموال اقل في كل مرة ؟

لأنها اصبحت ضعيفة و نحيفة ولا تستطيع العمل بطريقة جيدة .

5. How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

- He gave Beauty good food and fresh water. He was kind to him. He helped a poor woman to go to hospital for free.

كيف نعرف ان جيري عطوف ؟

- اعطي بيوتي طعام جيد ومياه عذبه وكان عطوف معه. كان عطوف مع السيدة الفقيرة واوصلها للمستشفى بالمجان.

6. Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi ?

No, he didn't drive fast but at his usual speed and he didn't do what they asked.

هل تعتقد ان الناس كانوا دائما سعداء بجيري كسائق اجرة ؟

لا, لانه لا يقود السيارة بسرعة فقط بالسرعة المعتادة ولا يفعل مايطلبوه منه.

7. Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

Because he was weak and ill because he was given no breakfast.

لماذا تعتقد ان بيوتي تم بيعه في الجزء الذي به الخيول العجوزة والتي تبدو مريضة؟

لانه كان ضعيف و مريض لأنه لم يعطى طعام للافطار.

8. Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

Because he didn't want to lose money. He had to work for seven days to get enough money for his family.

لماذا تعتقد ان سكينر اخبر الفتاة ان لاتقلق بعد ان قالت ان بيوتي يبدو ضعيف جدا ولا يستطيع حمل الشنط ؟

لأنه لا يريد ان يخسر المال ومضطر ان يعمل لسبع ايام ليحصل علي اموال كافية من اجل العائلة.

9. Why was it impossible for the horses to pull the carriage up a hill?

Because they could not put their heads down when they were wearing the reins

لماذا من المستحيل للاحصنة ان تسحب العربات اعلي التل ؟

لأنهم لا يستطيعوا ان يضعوا رؤوسهم للأسفل عندما يرتدوا للجام.

10. Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why / Why not?

Yes, because Filcher stole Beauty's food and gave it to his rabbits .

هل تعتقد ان فيلتشر يستحق ان يقبض عليه ؟ لماذا / لماذا لا ؟

نعم, لأن فيلتشر سرق طعام بيوتي و أعطاه للأرانب.



11. Do you think Black Beauty found it difficult about living in London? Why / Why not?

Yes, there was so much noise and so many people. It was difficult to find his way between all the other carriages.

هل تعتقد ان بيوتي وجد الامر صعب في المعيشة في لندن ؟ لماذا / لماذا لا ؟

نعم, لانه كان يوجد الكثير من الضوضاء و الناس وكان من الصعب ان يجد طريقه بين باقي العربات.

12. Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

He had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

لماذا جيري اصبح مريضاً في اعتقادك ؟

لانه كان عليه ان ينتظر خارج منزل الرجل الغني والجو كان بارد جداً.

13. Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?

Because he knew that they would sell me, and he was becoming old. He wouldn't have such a happy home again.

لماذا في رأيك بلاك بيوتي قلق ان جيري وجد وظيفة عند السيدة فولر ؟

لأنه يعرف انهم سيبيعوه وقد كبر في السن ولن يحظى ببيت سعيد مرة أخرى.

14. Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on black Beauty's first morning in London?

He didn't want Beauty to work hard for the first day.

لماذا تعتقد ان جيري اخذ كابتن للعمل في اول يوم لبلاك بيوتي في لندن ؟

لأنه ما كان يريد ان يعمل بيوتي بجد في يومه الاول ؟

15. What do you think of the two men who jumped into the taxi before the poor woman?

I think they behaved badly.

ماذا تعتقد في الرجلين الذين ركبوا في العربة قبل السيدة الفقيرة ؟

أعتقد انهم تصرفوا بطريقة سيئة.

16. What do you think might have happened if Black Beauty continued to work for skinner a long time?

I think he was going to die as he wasn't given enough food and didn't have enough energy.

ماذا برأيك ربما يحدث لو أستمر بيوتي للعمل لدي سكينر لمدة طويلة ؟

أعتقد انه كان علي حافة الموت لعدم إعطاؤه الطعام الكافي و امتلاك الطاقة الكافية للعمل.

17. Do you think that Skinner was a bad owner? Why?

Yes, because he didn't give Ginger and Beauty enough food and made them weak.

هل تعتقد ان سكينر مالك سيء ؟ لماذا ؟

نعم , لأنه ما كان يعطي بيوتي وجينجر طعام كافي و جعلهما ضعاف

18. Why do you think that the people who looked at Black beauty at the market were very poor?

Because he was put with the horses that were old or ill-looking.

لماذا تعتقد ان من كان ينظر الي بيوتي في السوق فقراء جداً ؟

لأنه وضع مع الخيول العجوزة والتي تبدو مريضة.



19. Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers?

Because holidays were not common for them. They had to work very long hours for seven days without a rest to get enough money for their families.

لماذا لم تكن الأجازات وقت جيد لسائقي التاكسي ؟

لأن الأجازات لم تكن شائعة لهم فهم مضطرون للعمل لساعة طويلة لمدة سبعة أيام بدون راحة ليحصلوا علي مال كاف من أجل عائلاتهم.

20. Why do you think Beauty couldn't pull Skinner's carriage up a hill ?

Because the carriage, the four passengers and their bags were too heavy.

في رأيك لماذا لم يستطع بيوتي سحب عربة سكينر أعلي التل ؟

لأن العربة و الاربعة ركاب و الحقائب كانت ثقيلة جداً.

21. Do you think the Earl really loved the horses? Why?

No, because they liked the latest fashion most and used reins which were uncomfortable to the horses.

هل تعتقد ان عائلة الايرل احبت الخيول ؟ ولماذا؟

لا , لانهم احبوا الموضة الحديثة أكثر و استخدموا اللجام وهو غير مريح للخيول.

22. Why do you think Ginger stopped kicking people who weren't good to her?

Because she is not strong enough to do that . Men are always stronger than her.

في رأيك لماذا توقفت جينجر عن ركل الناس الغير جيدين معها؟

لأنها لم تعد قوية بما يكفي لفعل ذلك . الرجال دائماً ما يكونوا أقوى منها.

23. Why do you think that Black Beauty felt sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

Because they had to work for seven days a week without rest.

في رأيك لماذا بيوتي شعر بالأسف لبعض سائقي التاكسي و خيولهم ؟

لأنه كان عليهم العمل ٧ أيام في الاسبوع بدون راحة.

24. What is the moral of the story?

We should be kind to working animals.

ماهو مغزي القصة .

يجب أن نكون لطفاء مع الحيوانات العاملة .

25. Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

Because he was thin and ill.

في رأيك لماذا تم بيع بيوتي في الجزء الذي به الخيول العجوزة والتي تبدو مريضة في السوق؟

لأنه كان نحيف ومريض.

26. Why do you think the reins were uncomfortable?

Because they kept the horses' heads high in the air all the time while they were pulling the carriages.

في رأيك لماذا تعتقد أن اللجام غير مريح ؟

لأنه يبقي رؤوس الخيول عالية في الهواء طوال الوقت وهم يسحبوا العربات.



## Characters

هذه اهم النقاط عن الشخصيات لحل سؤال التوصيل

### Black Beauty

was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride.

didn't like reins at all.

travelled to Bath on a train.

didn't find it easy to work in London at first.

was pleased with his new owner (Jerry).

was too weak to carry the family and their luggage up the hill.

became healthy again after Mr Thoroughgood and his grandson looked after him.

was happy to see Joe Green in the end.

had easier work in the end.

### Ginger

was Black Beauty's best friend.

wasn't able to run fast after her fall.

wasn't happy when they tightened her reins.

looked old and thin because Skinner didn't give her enough food.

didn't feel strong enough to work well or kick people.

### Lady smythe

liked the latest fastion

liked her horses to use special reins

tightened the reins hard.

### Lady Anne

liked to ride me around the park with her brother or cousins.

### lizzie

was a young horse at Earlshall park.



## York

was Earl Smythe's helper.

is a man who works for Earl Smythe.

was angry about the special reins.

## Mr Barry

is a businessman and Black Beauty's owner in Bath.

put Black Beauty good food to be healthy.

## Mr Barry's friend

suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks.

## Filcher

was Mr Barry's helper. He gave Beauty's food to his rabbits.

stole Beauty's food and gave it to his rabbits.

## Jerry

owned a taxi carriage and a horse called Captain.

took the woman and her son to the hospital without money.

was a kind man and gave his horses good food and fresh water.

believed that one pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired.

became ill because he got so cold and tired.

moved to a cottage with his family so that he could work for Mrs Fowler.

## Mr Grant

was the owner of a taxi business.

## Captain

is the horse who works with Black Beauty driving taxi for Jerry.

went out with the taxi carriage in the morning.

## Harry

is Jerry's son.

always helped to look after Black Beauty.

### Polly

was Jerry's wife.

She got Beauty some food and water and took him into a comfortable stable.

### Dolly

is Jerry's daughter.

### Mrs Fowler

is a wealthy woman who has a house in the country . - wanted Jerry to work for her.

### Skinner

- was a bad driver. - didn't give Black Beauty enough to eat.

said that Black Beauty was no good if he couldn't work.

### The vet

told Skinner that Beauty needed good food and rest.

### Miss Blomefield

was the woman who lived in the country with her two sisters.

### Joe Green

recognized Black Beauty from his white foot and white star

was pleased to see Black Beauty again.

### The doctor

told Jerry that he should stop driving a taxi.

### Willie

was Mr Thoroughgood's grandson.

### Mr Thoroughgood

bought Black Beauty as his grandson liked him.

His grandson (Willie) was delighted to buy Black Beauty,

took Black Beauty to a large field to give him good food.



## Unit (10)

### أهم كلمات الوحدة Key words

sleeper train	قطار النوم	sleeping car	عربة للنوم
meeting	اجتماع	first class	درجة أولى
scenery	منظر طبيعي	economy class	درجة ثانية
carriage	عربة قطار	stopping train	قطار يتوقف كثيرا
single ticket	تذكرة ذهاب فقط	express train	قطار سريع
destination	وجهة الوصول	air conditioning	تكييف هواء
booking	حجز	rail card	كارت اشتراك
return ticket	تذكرة ذهاب وعودة	platform	رصيف قطار
sports centre	مركز رياضي	breeze	نسيم

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. We took the.....train to Aswan.

- a. sleeper                      b. sleepy                      c. sleepless                      d. bag

2. A good manager always has.....with the workers.

- a. meetings                      b. articles                      c. weeding                      d. quarrel

3. The train leaves from .....number 2.

- a. uniform                      b. reform                      c. platform                      d. sidewalk

4. You can't travel on the train without having a.....

- a. shoes                      b. cap                      c. glasses                      d. ticket

5. ....means second class.

- a. Economy                      b. Business                      c. First                      d. Special

6. We are travelling to England. England is our.....

- a. destiny                      b. transport                      c. plantation                      d. destination

7. When you travel by train, you can see the.....of the countryside.

- a. borders                      b. president                      c. flag                      d. scenery

8. We had our meal in the.....carriage.

- a. restaurant                      b. playing                      c. sleeping                      d. meeting

9. During the summer holiday, it is hard to find a .....to stay at.

- a. river                      b. hotel                      c. train                      d. plane

10. He is good at making.....He is wise.

- a. cakes                      b. mistakes                      c. plates                      d. decisions

11. According to the....., our train leaves at 10 p.m.

- a. calendar                      b. timetable                      c. time machine                      d. timeline

12. ....tickets is the same as reserving tickets.

- a. Selling                      b. Booking                      c. Painting                      d. Cooking

13. He.....us to study hard.

- a. promised                      b. ask                      c. want                      d. agree

14. He booked a single ticket. The opposite of single here is.....

- a. double                      b. married                      c. unmarried                      d. return

15. I think it will rain. This is a.....

- a. arrangement                      b. prediction                      c. decision                      d. promise

16. You can buy tickets at the station or.....

- a. online                      b. after travelling                      c. offline                      d. after death

17. You can have a .....in the restaurant carriage.

- a. mall                      b. wheel                      c. meal                      d. meat

18. I recommend staying at this hotel it is cheap and.....

- a. comfortable                      b. hard                      c. noisy                      d. polluted

19. The train.....in Alexandria on time.

- a. got                      b. reached                      c. arrived                      d. went

20. He decided to return on the same day, so he booked a.....ticket.

- a. married                      b. return                      c. double                      d. twins

21. They booked a ..... to Spain.

- a. ticket                      b. room                      c. flag                      d. tick

22. You can have a single or.....ticket.

- a. double                      b. couple                      c. return                      d. married

23. A.....train is not comfortable because it stops many times.

- a. sleeper                      b. fast                      c. express                      d. stopping

24. ....3 is the place where we can take our train.

- 2a. Plate                      b. Sidewalk                      c. Pavement                      d. Platform

25. The.....to Alexandria takes 2 hours by train.

- a. voyage                      b. journey                      c. flight                      d. flog

26. It is cheaper if you have a .....card.

- a. wheel                      b. peel                      c. mail                      d. rail

27. You won't feel hot as the train has.....

- a. air pod                      b. airline                      c. air conditioning                      d. airport

28. This meal costs 150 Egyptian.....

- a. people                      b. bats                      c. pounds                      d. pages





29. What.....is the ticket to Aswan?

- a. much                      b. coast                      c. price                      d. prize

30. Go to the.....office and buy two return tickets.

- a. ticket                      b. police                      c. food                      d. water

31. There are many people, the train is going to be.....

- a. free                      b. easy                      c. empty                      d. crowded

32. The mobile is a form of.....these days.

- a. travel                      b. energy                      c. power                      d. communication

33. You can travel by car, train or .....

- a. trainer                      b. coach                      c. stick                      d. steam

34. We went on a ----- by plane.

- a. ride                      b. flight                      c. voyage                      d. cycle

35. You can enjoy.....when you are on the beach.

- a. noise                      b. freeze                      c. breeze                      d. squeeze

36. Cars, buses and trains are kinds of.....

- a. port                      b. transport                      c. transplant                      d. transmit

37. We saw many.....in the museum.

- a. status                      b. statues                      c. oceans                      d. stables

38. What is the.....between Cairo and Tanta? - about 90 KM.

- a. distance                      b. age                      c. wall                      d. fight

39. ....are people travelling on a train.

- a. Passengers                      b. Pilots                      c. Divers                      d. Thieves

40. Let's.....the quiz.

- a. making                      b. answering                      c. do                      d. doing

### تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following using the word(s) on brackets to give the same meaning

1 – I have arranged to visit Aswan. (visiting)

2 – I intend to visit Aswan. (going)

3 – Our plane is at 9 p.m. (leaves)

4 – Has she decided to travel abroad? (going)



5 – I promise to buy you a mobile. (**will**)

6 – Ali's intention is to be a doctor. (**going to**)

7 – Are you going to buy a car? (**intend**)

8 – He has promised to give me the book. (**will**)

9 – There are dark clouds in the sky. ( **I think**)

10 – She has arranged to study English. (**studying**)

## Model Exam unit (10)

### 1. Finish the following dialogue

Atef is booking a ticket to Aswan

**assistant** : How can I help you?

**Atef** : (1).....

**assistant** : (2).....?

**Atef** : I am travelling to Aswan.

**assistant** : Do you want a single or return ticket?

**Atef** : Single, please. (3).....?

**assistant** : It is 150 pounds.

**Atef** : (4).....

### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. You want to book a return ticket.

2. You ask about the price of the book.

3. Someone has helped you.



### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

Life in big cities like Cairo is always busy, and the streets are always crowded. Some people are going to work, others are going home, there are people who are going shopping and tourists who are sightseeing. However, people cannot walk everywhere. **Many** drive cars and others travel by bus or taxi, and some ride motorbikes or bicycles. There are often traffic jams, then all the cars, buses and lorries stand still and wait to move again. Every morning people go to work and return home in the afternoon at about the same time. When this happens, the roads are very crowded. We call it "the rush hour", because everyone wants to go somewhere quickly.

#### A. Answer the following questions

1. How is life in big cities like Cairo?

2. Why do people call it rush hour?

3. What do tourists do?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4. The word " Many " refers to.....

a. working hours      b. people      c. cars      d. trains

5. Busy and.....have the same meaning.

a. crowded      b. empty      c. free      d. small

#### The Reader

#### 4. Match column "A" with column "B"

(A)	(B)
1. York	a. gave beauty less food
2. Black Beauty	b. travelled to Bath on a plane
3. Mr. Barry	c. knew a man who wanted a new horse
4. Filcher	d. travelled to Bath on a train
	e. rode a horse to keep him healthy



### 5. Answer the following questions

1. What was the latest fashion did Lady Smythe like for horses?
2. How do you know that Filcher was a bad man?

### 6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Excuse me, is Alexandria the final ----- of the train.  
a. examination                      b. preservation                      c. destination                      d. play station
2. We took a ----- to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.  
a. bicycle                      b. ferry                      c. ship                      d. plane
3. Do you want to catch the stopping train or the ----- train?  
a. carriage                      b. platform                      c. express                      d. going
4. We went on a ----- by plane.  
a. ride                      b. flight                      c. voyage                      d. cycle
5. What is the.....between Cairo and Tanta? - about 90 KM.  
a. distance                      b. age                      c. wall                      d. fight
6. Economy means ----- class.  
a. first                      b. second                      c. supper                      d. business

### 7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. We have arranged to visit Aswan. (visiting)
2. I promise to buy you a mobile. (will)
3. The bus is at three o'clock tomorrow. (arrives)

### 8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on

" Different means of transport"





## Unit (11)

### Key words أهم كلمات الوحدة

addict	يُدمِن	addiction	إدمان
smoking	التدخين	physical	جسدي
cough	يكح	psychological	نفسي
lung	الرئة	social networking sites	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
disease	مرض	drugs	مخدرات
pass	ينجح	suggest	يقترح
possibility	امكانية	success	النجاح
organ	عضو من الجسم	skills	مهارات

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. He always gets the best marks. He is a.....student.  
a. lazy                      b. successful                      c. liar                      d. weak
2. His behavior has.....we don't know why.  
a. changed                      b. sold                      c. bought                      d. stolen
3. She has become.....to smoking.  
a. addicted                      b. predicted                      c. forced                      d. allowed
4. He can't play a lot because he suffers from heart.....  
a. stickers                      b. posters                      c. problems                      d. friends
5. There was smoke, so we ..... a lot.  
a. laughed                      b. coughed                      c. loved                      d. ate
6. My grandfather suffers from.....disease. He can't breathe easily.  
a. lung                      b. eye                      c. ear                      d. leg
7. He was sad because he.....his exam.  
a. failed                      b. didn't pass                      c. succeeded in                      d. A & B
8. He had an accident but he became healthy after having an.....  
a. oil                      b. operation                      c. medicine                      d. cure
9. This car isn't mine, it .....to my father.  
a. longs                      b. songs                      c. rings                      d. belongs
10. Doctors.....bodies to help patients.  
a. cut into                      b. play into                      c. eat into                      d. swim into
11. He spent much money.....clothes.  
a. to buy                      b. to buying                      c. to buys                      d. buying

12. He stopped ..... fast food because it is unhealthy.  
a. eat                                      b. eats                                      c. to eat                                      d. eating
13. To.....is to make someone agree to do something.  
a. force                                      b. persuade                                      c. refuse                                      d. reject
14. Smoking.....our lungs.  
a. helps                                      b. eases                                      c. calms                                      d. damages
15. The heart is an important.....of the body.  
a. member                                      b. uniform                                      c. twin                                      d. organ
16. They are.....who look for things from the past.  
a. coaches                                      b. trainers                                      c. archaeologist                                      d. dentists
17. The word "fix" is the same as.....  
a. mend                                      b. wing                                      c. mind                                      d. find
18. He always wears.....to protect his hands.  
a. hat                                      b. socks                                      c. trousers                                      d. gloves
19. The brave.....were able to put out the fire in no time.  
a. fire alarms                                      b. firefighters                                      c. robbers                                      d. thieves
20. To.....means to be successful in an exam.  
a. last                                      b. fast                                      c. pass                                      d. fail
21. There are many form of.....such as smoking and using mobiles.  
a. addictions                                      b. injection                                      c. protection                                      d. transport
22. When your body need something. This is.....addiction.  
a. physical                                      b. psychological                                      c. spiritual                                      d. soul
23. When you need something to feel ok. This is .....addiction.  
a. body                                      b. physical                                      c. kidney                                      d. psychological
24. Some people are addicted to.....networking sites.  
a. sociable                                      b. social                                      c. sole                                      d. sure
25. Smoking is one of my bad.....  
a. habits                                      b. customs                                      c. traditions                                      d. costumes
26. Bad people will try to.....you to try cigarettes.  
a. persuade                                      b. avoid                                      c. prevent                                      d. shave
27. Some .....can be useful when we help patients.  
a. drugs                                      b. mugs                                      c. theft                                      d. plates
28. I have no.....for his bad behavior.  
a. reason                                      b. cause                                      c. explain                                      d. complain
29. Your .....are amazing, They will choose you for the job.  
a. skulls                                      b. miles                                      c. malls                                      d. skills





30. Use your.....to think not your body.

- a. legs                      b. eyes                      c. brain                      d. fingers

31. ....out means to be careful.

- a. Wear                      b. Walk                      c. Mean                      d. Watch

32. When you achieve.....you will be happy.

- a. nothing                      b. failure                      c. addiction                      d. success

33. If you smoke a lot, you won't be.....

- a. weak                      b. bad                      c. ill                      d. fit

34. He is not rude , he is.....

- a. bad                      b. liar                      c. polite                      d. impolite

35. We should encourage our children.....hard.

- a. study                      b. studied                      c. to study                      d. studying

36. Unable to stop doing something-----

- a. pretended                      b. intended                      c. addicted                      d. predicted

37. When a doctor cuts into your body to help you get better he does an-----

- a. subject                      b. project                      c. survey                      d. operation

38. Physical is related with your-----

- a. mind                      b. brain                      c. body                      d. heart

39. The doctor ----- the operation yesterday.

- a. have                      b. had                      c. did                      d. do

40. I regret ----- my time. I should have been careful.

- a. wasted                      b. to waste                      c. wasting                      d. waste

### تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following using the word(s) on brackets to give the same meaning

1 – Ali did very badly in the exams. (should)

2 – Your brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill. (shouldn't)

3 – I am sure, he killed the girl. (must)

4 – I am not sure, they took the money. ( might)

5 – It is probable that Mona lost her mobile. (**might**)

6 – He insulted his friend. (**shouldn't**)

7 – He didn't kill the man. (**can't**)

8 – He ignored his father's advice. (**shouldn't** )

9 – Dina should have arrived early. (**didn't**)

10. It is possible that he won the first prize. (**might**)

## Model Exam unit (11)

### 1. Finish the following dialogue

**Ehab is interviewing Ramy about addiction to things**

**Ehab** : (1)-----?

**Ramy** : There are two ways that people can become addicted to things.

**Ehab** : (2)-----?

**Ramy** : They are physical and psychological addiction.

**Ehab** : How can we help those people?

**Ramy** : (3)----- and give them advice.

**Ehab** : Thanks for coming today.

**Ramy** : (4) -----

### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. Your friend didn't study hard for the exam.

2. You regret not helping your mum.

3. You advise your sister to arrive on time.



### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

Fast food may taste good, but it is not good for you. You should not eat it very often. This food does not have the vitamins and nutrients that you need. Healthy food will help you grow strong and healthy. There are extra calories and fat in fast food. Fast food restaurants also give you servings that are too big. It is fun to go out and have a fast food meal. In order to stay healthy these meals should not be eaten all the time. Choose healthier food to keep a healthy diet.

### A. Answer the following questions

1. What is the writer's opinion of fast food?
2. What extra ingredients does fat food have ?
3. Why should we choose healthier food?

### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4. Fast food is not healthy because it doesn't have enough.....

- a. vitamins                      b. calories                      c. fat                      d. songs

5. We.....eat fast food all the time.

- a. must                      b. should                      c. have to                      d. shouldn't

## The Reader

### 4. Match column "A" with column "B"

(A)		(B)
1. Earl Shall park		a. was not happy when they tightened her rein
2. Lady Anne		b. liked to ride Beauty around the Park
3. Lady Smythe		c. liked her horse with special saddles
4. Ginger		d. Liked her horses with special reins
		e. was bigger than Birtwick Park.

### 5. Answer the following questions

1. How did Filcher affect Beauty's health?

2. Why did Barry's friend advise him to watch his helper?

### 6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. To be successful in an exam is to-----

- a. bathe                      b. bath                      c. path                      d. pass

2. An organ which helps you breathe is your-----

- a. stomach                      b. heart                      c. lung                      d. eye

3. They are very good footballers, so the reason for losing their games is-----

- a. mind                      b. mental                      c. physical                      d. psychological

4. You should try to ----- the right choices.

- a. making                      b. burn                      c. make                      d. done

5. Smoking.....our lungs.

- a. helps                      b. eases                      c. calms                      d. damages

6. – It is very bad to smoke a ----- in a hospital.

- a. pile                      b. file                      c. cigarette                      d. e-mail

### 7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. I am sure, he travelled by train. (**must**)

2. I am not sure, they took the money. ( **might**)

3. He didn't help his friend. (**should**)

### 8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on

" Kinds and examples of addiction"



## Unit (12)

أهم كلمات الوحدة Key words

manager	مدير	station	محطة
proud	فخور	manager	مدير
especially	خصوصا	inspector	مفتش
manual	يدوي	skills	مهارات
transport	النقل	technical schools	مدارس فنية
helmet	خوذة	industry	صناعة
project	مشروع	farming	الزراعة
dual	ثنائي	nursing	التمريض
electrician	كهربائي	education	التعليم

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. I am working on a.....for a big new building.

- a. uniform      b. idea      c. project      d. plans

2. I asked the man about the.....to take the metro.

- a. his name      b. station      c. studio      d. boat

3. The.....is responsible for the site and people working there.

- a. manager      b. thief      c. sailors      d. guards

4. It is important to wear a.....to protect your head.

- a. shoes      b. glass      c. helmet      d. necklace

5. To get a job, you must have some.....

- a. experiments      b. experience      c. cards      d. trousers

6. Engineers and workers always wear.....during working hours.

- a. boots      b. boats      c. fans      d. rings

7. I like my work although it is.....

- a. tired      b. tiring      c. rewarding      d. nice

8. You must .....out for falling things.

- a. take      b. make      c. lake      d. look

9. I am.....to help others. I feel happy.

- a. pride      b. proud      c. sad      d. angry

10. I'd like.....a new mobile.

- a. buying      b. bought      c. bys      d. to buy



11. I think the plane is the most important form of.....  
a. imagination                      b. transport                      c. education                      d. hobbies
12. I need a.....to play chess.  
a. money                      b. partner                      c. port                      d. fort
13. ....is done by hand.  
a. Magical                      b. Spiritual                      c. Automatic                      d. Manual
14. We need a.....to lead us on our tour.  
a. blind man                      b. guide                      c. robber                      d. liar
15. I can't travel abroad because I have no.....  
a. passport                      b. airport                      c. glasses                      d. socks
16. Swimming is an individual sport, but football is a.....sport.  
a. team                      b. individual                      c. twin                      d. pair
17. Working abroad has its.....and disadvantages.  
a. advantages                      b. disadvantages                      c. bad points                      d. ill points
18. Ali was.....of a team who did the operation.  
a. port                      b. fort                      c. sore                      d. part
19. He turned.....his computer and went to bed.  
a. on                      b. off                      c. of                      d. to
20. When the train reached the station, all the.....got off.  
a. engines                      b. mirrors                      c. passengers                      d. passages
21. The main job of a station manager is to keep people.....  
a. dangerous                      b. sad                      c. angry                      d. safe
22. Ticket inspectors and.....work at the station.  
a. pilots                      b. divers                      c. climbers                      d. train drivers
23. A manager must.....the workers to do their jobs well.  
a. feed                      b. encourage                      c. discourage                      d. kill
24. When a person loses their bags. This is a.....  
a. suggestion                      b. solution                      c. problem                      d. idea
25. The train.....down so we were late.  
a. slept                      b. broke                      c. sat                      d. lived
26. You should be.....when you deal with a problem.  
a. patient                      b. angry                      c. laugh                      d. lazy
27. This job.....interesting.  
a. sees                      b. sounds                      c. sail                      d. feel
28. Ticket.....ask people about their tickets.  
a. sailors                      b. sellers                      c. inspectors                      d. divers





29. After prep school, we have general and.....education.

- a. technical                      b. financial                      c. facial                      d. imaginary

30. ....changes all the time.

- a. Pyramids                      b. Books                      c. Machines                      d. Technology

31. Industry or.....are forms of jobs that need skills.

- a. nursing                      b. smelling                      c. tasting                      d. laughing

32. Under.....Education System, students spend some days at places of work.

- a. Logical                      b. Tunnel                      c. Sunny                      d. Dual

33. You.....when you finish studying.

- a. graduate                      b. die                      c. marry                      d. travel

34. Life would be.....without electricians, nurses and doctors.

- a. easy                      b. possible                      c. nice                      d. impossible

35. Bike.....are people who take bikes from canals.

- a. carpenters                      b. sailors                      c. sellers                      d. catchers

36. Many bikes.....the bottom of boats.

- a. damage                      b. helps                      c. increases                      d. feeds

37. I asked an.....to fix the light.

- a. electronic                      b. electrician                      c. mechanic                      d. nurse

38. ....hard work, you will fail.

- a. With                      b. By                      c. For                      d. Without

39. Sixty.....of students go to technical schools in Egypt.

- a. percent                      b. present                      c. accident                      d. monuments

40. At technical school, students learn.....to use them in the world of work.

- a. skills                      b. skulls                      c. smells                      d. small

### تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following using the word(s) on brackets to give the same meaning

1 - "Stand up," the teacher said to the class. (ordered)

2 - "The museum is next to the park," She said to Omar. (told)

3 - "English is our favourite subject," my friends said to me. (told)

4 – “I am learning how to swim,” said Tarek. (**that**)

5 – “My sister wants to buy a book,” said Ahmed. (**Ahmed said**)

6 – “I come from Egypt,” said Ali. (**reported speech**)

7 – “Breathe in,” the doctor said. (**asked**)

8 – “Please don’t be late,” the teacher said. (**warned**)

9 – He told me that they would travel the following day. (**said to**)

10 – He warned me not to touch the wire. (**said to me**)

## Model Exam unit (12)

### 1. Finish the following dialogue

Ayman and Ahmad are on the phone:

Ahmad : Will you see the next match?

Ayman : (1)-----I will see it in the club.

Ahmad : When does it start?

Ayman : (2)-----

Ahmed: (3)-----?

Ayman: Certainly, you can come with me

Ahmad : (4)-----?

Ayman : Let's meet in front of the club.

### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. You ask your friend about his opinion of the film.

2. You express your opinion about the exam.

3. Your father thinks that Facebook wastes time, you agree.



### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

A zoo is a place where we can see animals from many different countries. There is at least one zoo in every country. In England there are five zoos. Some people do not like zoos. They think that it is bad to keep wild animals in cages. Other people think that if the cage is large, the animals have good food every day and if they are ill, they are given medicines. They do not have to worry about enemies. In the jungle small animals often do not live for many years because they are killed and eaten by the large animals. In a zoo these small animals are safe.

Most children enjoy a visit to a zoo. They usually prefer to look at large animals. Although these are not always the most interesting. Some visitors are very unkind to the animals. They throw things at them and laugh at them.

### A. Answer the following questions

1. What is a zoo?
2. What do unkind people do in the zoo?
3. Why don't small animals live for many years in the jungle?

### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4. There are.....zoos in England.

- a. five                      b. fifty                      c. fifteen                      d. one

5. In the zoo, animals are kept in.....

- a. caves                      b. cars                      c. cameras                      d. cages

The Reader

### 4. Match column "A" with column "B"

(A)		(B)
1. York		a. gave beauty less food
2. Black Beauty		b. travelled to Bath on a plane
3. Mr. Barry		c. knew a man who wanted a new horse
4. Filcher		d. travelled to Bath on a train
		e. rode a horse to keep him healthy

### 5. Answer the following questions

1. Why did Mr. Barry's doctor advise him to ride a horse?

2. Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?

### 6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Houses, hotels and factories are examples of .....

a. buildings                      b. computers                      c. animals                      d. hobbies

2. Your----- at work tells you what to do each day.

a. manage                      b. manager                      c. dentist                      d. oculist

3. ....means much more than usual.

a. Public                      b. General                      c. Especially                      d. Generally

4. ....workers often have to wear boots and helmets.

a. Manual                      b. Office                      c. Bank                      d. farm

5. A good teacher always ----- his pupils to do their best.

a. stops                      b. prevents                      c. encourages                      d. neglects

6. You should be.....when you have a problem.

a. patient                      b. angry                      c. laugh                      d. lazy

### 7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. "Please don't be late," the teacher said. (warned)

2. He warned me not to touch the wire. (said to me)

3. "I am learning how to swim," said Tarek. (that)

### 8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on:

"Different kinds of jobs"





## Unit (13)

Key words أهم كلمات الوحدة

turn	يدور - لفّة	solar system	النظام الشمسي
meteorite	نيازك	planet	كوكب
polite	مؤدّب	astronomer	عالم فلك
behave	يتصرف	facts	حقائق
wonder	يتساءل	file	ملف
relatives	أقارب	shooting stars	شهب
explain	يشرح	astronomy	علم الفلك
observatory	مرصد	telescope	تلسكوب

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. What do you know about the.....system?

- a. solar                      b. size                      c. silly                      d. pile

2. ....work at the observatory.

- a. Pilots                      b. astronomers                      c. archaeologists                      d. fishermen

3. There are eight.....in our solar system.

- a. players                      b. plates                      c. plans                      d. planets

4. When the sun.....on the moon, it is very hot.

- a. shines                      b. dies                      c. sets                      d. goes down

5. A shooting.....is a small piece of rock that is travelling through space.

- a. moon                      b. sun                      c. star                      d. stool

6. The sun is a big.....

- a. planet                      b. star                      c. earth                      d. moon

7. This side of the moon is.....it is around minus 153 degrees.

- a. hot                      b. very hot                      c. boiling                      d. freezing

8. An.....studies planets and stars.

- a. archaeologist                      b. astrologer                      c. diver                      d. astronomer

9. Egypt is going to send a.....to space.

- a. moon                      b. sun                      c. satellite                      d. earth

10. "....." is the opposite of appear.

- a. Disappear                      b. Fear                      c. Clear                      d. Clean



11. The earth's moon is.....  
a. oval                      b. square                      c. foggy                      d. round
12. I use a.....to see things that are far away.  
a. glasses                      b. stethoscope                      c. knife                      d. telescope
13. A.....is a person who works at universities.  
a. professor                      b. servant                      c. pilot                      d. transmitter
14. The Earth and .....are names of planets.  
a. March                      b. march                      c. Mars                      d. Martha
15. Circle and oval are forms of .....  
a. share                      b. shapes                      c. shade                      d. shadow
16. .... are important for any country.  
a. Thieves                      b. Robbers                      c. Scientists                      d. Bullies
17. A team of.....studied the shooting star and its effect.  
a. sailors                      b. actors                      c. astrologers                      d. astronomers
18. They are.....in travelling abroad.  
a. interest                      b. interests                      c. interested                      d. interesting
19. Shooting stars travel through.....  
a. spare                      b. state                      c. space                      d. spear
20. There might be.....on the moon.  
a. life                      b. eyes                      c. sun                      d. stars
21. ....you very much for helping me.  
a. Thank                      b. Sank                      c. Think                      d. Sand
22. He studies.....to be an astronomer.  
a. archaeology                      b. math                      c. history                      d. astronomy
23. Can you.....why you come late?  
a. plan                      b. explain                      c. plant                      d. plane
24. We can't feel the earth.....  
a. moving                      b. drawing                      c. feeding                      d. eating
25. I .....if you watch films.  
a. wander                      b. wonder                      c. wonderful                      d. wonderland
26. The sun is the only.....in our solar system.  
a. state                      b. stay                      c. star                      d. planet
27. Astronomers usually use.....at an observatory.  
a. telescopes                      b. glasses                      c. umbrellas                      d. rockets
28. A star is made of.....  
a. gas                      b. air                      c. ice                      d. water





29. The sun is bigger than the earth. This is a.....

- a. intention                      b. prediction                      c. suggestion                      d. fact

30. Our teacher doesn't allow.....in class.

- a. speak                      b. speaking                      c. speaks                      d. to speak

31. Some boys like football but.....boys like tennis.

- a. others                      b. other                      c. another                      d. an other

32. ....are made of tiny pieces of ice and water.

- a. Clouds                      b. Rocks                      c. Rockets                      d. Sun

33. It is difficult to find water in the.....

- a. tap                      b. sea                      c. river                      d. desert

34. To answer a question in class, put.....your hand.

- a. up                      b. down                      c. away                      d. on

35. My favourite part of the job is when I use the -----to look at the stars.

- a. telescope                      b. glasses                      c. scissors                      d. booklet .

36. Moons go around-----

- a. planets                      b. steers                      c. plants                      d. stairs

37. .... means you want to know why.

- a. lie                      b. wonder                      c. wander                      d. die

38. An----- is a building from which scientists watch space.

- a. john                      b. library                      c. laboratory                      d. observatory

39. If you are-----, you speak and behave in a nice way.

- a. polite                      b. rude                      c. impolite                      d. liar

40. Could you----- answer some questions for me?

- a. possibly                      b. possible                      c. impossible                      d. probable

## تمارين على الجرامر

1 - "Can you play the guitar?" Nabila asked Hana. (if)

2 - "How long does it take to get to school?" Wards said to me. (asked)

3 - "What is a shooting star?" Jude said. (inquired)

4 - Ziad said to him, "Is it hot or cold on the moon?" (wondered)



5- She said to them," Did he watch the film?" (if)

6- Salma said to me" What is your name?" (asked)

7 - "How many planets are there?" He said. (He wanted to know)

8 - The student said to the professor," Are you an astronomer?" (asked)

9 - He asked me when they would come. (said to me)

10 - "Do you like reading, Salim?" said the teacher. ( asked)

### Model Exam unit (13)

#### 1. Finish the following dialogue

Nora is talking to an astronomer

Nora: Can I ask you some questions?

Astronomer: (1)-----.

Nora: (2)-----?

Astronomer: There are 8 planets in our solar system.

Nora: (3) -----?

Astronomer: No, not all the planets have moons.

Nora: Thank you very much.

Astronomer: (4)-----

#### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. You ask your sister to open the window.

2. Your father asks you to bring him some water.

3. You want your brother to help you.



### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

The computer has become one of the wonders of the world. It's clear that it affects all our lives. The computer systems are developing all the time. In the future, you will probably drive your smart car from Cairo to Aswan. You don't have to worry during this long journey. If something goes wrong with your car engine, the computer in your car will help you. It will find out what's wrong and do what should be done. It will connect to the internet to find out the nearest garage that can fix your car problems. This can be done by sending an email. It will be easy to know the problem. Your computer will also help you know the way if you get lost using satellite. Really it is a great wonder!

#### A ) Answer the following questions :

1 - What do you think of the computer ?

2 - How will the computer help drivers in the future ?

3 - What does the underlined word " It " refer to ?

#### B ) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4 - The computer in your smart car will help you to .....

a ) sell your car

b ) build you garage

c ) know what is wrong with your car

d ) lose the way

5 - You will never feel ..... while driving a smart car.

a ) happy

b ) safe

c ) worried

d ) relaxed

### The Reader

#### 4. Match column "A" with column "B"

( A )		( B )
1 – Mr Barry		a – the horse who works with Black Beauty driving taxis
2 – Lady Smythe		b – A wealthy woman who has a house in the country
3 – Captain		c – Earl Smythe's daughter
4 – Mrs Fowler		d – a businessman and Black Beauty's owner in Bath
		e – liked the latest fashion.



## 5. Answer the following questions

1 - Why did Black Beauty like Jerry Barker ?

2- What do you think of Skinner ?

## 6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. The biggest object in our solar system is the-----

- a. sun                                      b. moon                                      c. earth                                      d. meteorite

2. Could you explain why we can't feel the earth.....?

- a. turn                                      b. sleep                                      c. speak                                      d. swims

3. Are you -----me, pupils?

- a. follows                                      b. following                                      c. follow                                      d. followed

4. There are many interesting----- about stars.

- a. mice                                      b. faces                                      c. facts                                      d. fog

5. They looked.....a telescope to see the stars.

- a. throw                                      b. threw                                      c. through                                      b. sorrow

6. At night in the desert, you can sometimes see----- which disappear very quickly.

- a. sun                                      b. camels                                      c. shooting stars                                      d. moons

## 7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. Nora said" Do all the planets have moons?" (asked)

2. "How many planets are there?" He said. (He wanted to know)

3. He asked me when they would come. (said to me)

## 8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on:

" The importance of the sun"



## Unit (14)

### Key words أهم كلمات الوحدة

dome	قبة	vote	يصوت / ينتخب
marble	رخام	natural	طبيعي
minaret	مأذنة	waterfall	شلال مياة
monument	أثر	man-made	من صنع الانسان
wonders	عجائب	oasis	واحه
original	أصلي	The High Dam	السد العالي
ruler	حاكم	projects	مشروعات
fountain	نافورة	adventure	مغامرة

### تمارين على الكلمات

- The internet is one of the modern.....  
a. wanders                      b. wonders                      c. warriors                      d. mirrors
- Write a.....of the things you need to buy.  
a. list                              b. lost                              c. menu                              d. models
- There are.....and statues from the past.  
a. tremble                      b. rockets                      c. rackets                      d. temples
- The.....was used to guide ships in the sea.  
a. Eiffel Tower                      b. Pyramid                      c. torch                      d. Lighthouse
- How about writing a new list? - This is a.....  
a. opinion                      b. suggestion                      c. idea                      d. essay
- He is a wise man . He always makes right.....  
a. mistakes                      b. theft                      c. problems                      d. decisions
- In Al-Azhar Park, we saw wonderful gardens and.....  
a. mountains                      b. fountains                      c. planes                      d. plates
- Most mosques have a dome and.....  
a. minarets                      b. statues                      c. obelisks                      d. fountains
- .....can damages the outside part of places.  
a. Revolution                      b. Pollution                      c. Imagination                      d. Play station
- He left his work for many.....  
a. season                      b. cause                      c. year                      d. reasons
- We must.....monuments all over the world.  
a. destroy                      b. protect                      c. hurt                      d. sell



12. To.....means to save and protect.  
a. resell                      b. book                      c. preserve                      d. delete
13. There is a new factory which produces.....to feed children.  
a. dairies                      b. diaries                      c. libraries                      d. monuments
14. The .....of this restaurant includes grilled fish.  
a. list                      b. mast                      c. lost                      d. menu
15. ....me to take the umbrella with us.  
a. Remember                      b. Remind                      c. Remain                      d. Rock
16. The.....of our country is a king.  
a. rule                      b. road                      c. role                      d. ruler
17. There are many restaurants.....The Nile.  
a. a long                      b. along                      c. a longer                      d. belongs
18. He played football in addition to watching TV. " in addition to" means.....  
a. so                      b. because                      c. as well as                      d. as
19. We should.....money for charities.  
a. collect                      b. correct                      c. reject                      d. steal
20. This photo is not.....it is fake.  
a. original                      b. wrong                      c. imaginary                      d. unreal
21. We will.....on which wonder should be the best.  
a. eat                      b. vote                      c. rode                      d. cook
22. The Pyramid and the lighthouse are.....wonders.  
a. modern                      b. new                      c. fashionable                      d. ancient
23. Wadi Rayyan.....are famous in Fyoom.  
a. Earthquakes                      b. Waterfalls                      c. Sand                      d. Money
24. We get electricity from The Aswan High.....  
a. Dome                      b. Bomb                      c. Tomb                      d. Dam
25. The teacher asked Hassan to ----- his homework as he didn't do it well.  
a. redo                      b. buy                      c. clean                      d. miss
26. This book is about old ----- of the World like the Pyramids.  
a. Trees                      b. wonders                      c. wanders                      d. planets
27. The -----Gardens of Babylon are in Iraq .  
a. Hanging                      b. Floating                      c. Swimming                      d. Sleeping
28. You are right, I couldn't ----- more.  
a. agree                      b. disagree                      c. refuse                      d. free
29. There is a big ----- where the river goes over a cliff.  
a. film                      b. water cycle                      c. waterfall                      d. water drop



30. Lake Nasser is a -----lake.

- a. traditional                      b. modern                      c. man-made                      d. personal

31. The Channel.....between England and France is a modern wonder.

- a. Tunnel                      b. Riddle                      c. Pedal                      d. Funnel

32. The Bibliotheca Alexandria was.....by a group of architects.

- a. signed                      b. destroyed                      c. designed                      d. resigned

33. I don't like watching films, .....

- a. too                      b. neither                      c. also                      d. either

34. Something that is not natural is.....

- a. man-made                      b. normal                      c. natural                      d. not real

35. You can usually find trees and birds at an-----

- a. art gallery                      b. adventure                      c. oasis                      d. object

36. It is a good idea to ----- the school books many times.

- a. burn                      b. misread                      c. reread                      d. kill

37. The UNESCO helps to ----- important sites.

- a. destroy                      b. protect                      c. infect                      d. burn

38. The Cairo Tower should be ----- the list.

- a. from                      b. in                      c. on                      d. by

39. Zamalek reached the.....and won the Africa cup.

- a. fear                      b. final                      c. fatal                      d. foot

40 .....is good for our body.

- a. Vitamin                      b. poison                      c. rock                      d. sand

### تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following using the word(s) on brackets to give the same meaning

1 – They have painted the building again. (been)

2 – Someone has drawn a picture in my diary. (A picture)

3 – Our school has won the competition. (passive)

4 – Archaeologists have found an ancient site. (been)

5 – A lot of money has been collected for the charity. (We)



6 – They have planted trees along the river. (**Trees**)

7 – Has she sent the e-mails? (**Have**)

8 – Teachers have taught us English. (**been**)

9 – Mona watched TV a short time ago. (**just**)

10 – They have played football since 2010. (**for**)

## Model Exam unit (14)

### 1. Finish the following dialogue

Basant and Abdo are talking about the wonders.

Basant: What is this list about?

Abdo: (1)-----

Basant: Seven wonders! (2)-----?

Abdo: Yes, there are some of them in Egypt.

Basant: (3)-----?

Abdo: They are the Pyramids and the Lighthouse.

Basant: Is there a lighthouse now?

Abdo: (4) -----

### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1 . Your friend thinks that the Suez Canal is a great project, you agree.

2 . Your friend asks you when the book club will meet.

3 . You ask your friend about his opinion of the film.

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

Life was quite different in the past. Everything was simpler. People used to talk a lot, especially within the same family. There were no televisions or any social media. Most people walked to work, stayed at home to talk and discuss any problem together to solve it. They went to bed early, so they used to go to work so fresh and interested in their work. Now, everything has changed. Man has no time to listen to whoever. People become much busier. They hardly get together. Now, modern technology helps people do their work fast and well. They can use it to communicate by writing emails, video call programmes, talking on the internet and voice calls through mobile phones. Technology can help you to do many things.

#### A. Answer the following questions

- 1 . Why did people in the past go to work so fresh and interested ?
- 2 . How does modern technology help people?
- 3 . Do you think life in the past was better than life now? Why / Why not?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

- 4 . The underlined pronoun “ it ” refers to .....  
a . work                      b . technology                      c . video                      d . life
- 5 . Now, people have ..... time to meet and talk.  
a . more                      b . much                      c . a lot                      d . less

#### The Reader

#### 4. Match column “A” with column “B”

A		B
1 – Filcher		a . wasn't able to run fast after her fall .
2 – Jerry		b . used to steal the horses' food .
3 – Ginger		c . didn't find it easy to work in London at first .
4 – Black Beauty		d . took the woman and her son to the hospital without money .
		e . was an old farmer .

**5. Answer the following questions**

1. Why did the Earl decide to sell the horses?
2. Why do you think Black Beauty felt sorry for both the horses and their drivers?

**6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d**

1. The Taj Mahal is a ..... in India.

- a. pyramid                      b. moment                      c. monument                      d. tower

2. You should ask before----- decisions .

- a. eating                      b. singing                      c. making                      d. reading

3. A -----is a person like a king who can tell people what to do.

- a. ruler                      b. farmer                      c. headmaster                      d. headmistress

4. The top of a building that is the shape of half a circle is a-----

- a. pyramid                      b. tower                      c. gum                      d. dome

5. This book is about old ----- of the World like the Pyramids.

- a. Trees                      b. wonders                      c. wanders                      d. planets

6. A fire has ----- ancient objects.

- a. built                      b. destroyed                      c. decorated                      d. preserved

**7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning**

1. He hasn't taken the photos yet. (been)
2. Has she sent the e-mails? (Have)
3. They have played football since 2010. (for)

**8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on....**

**Modern and ancient wonders**





## Unit (15)

Key words أهم كلمات الوحدة

development	تنمية	privacy setting	اعدادات الخصوصية
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	robber	لص
advertise	يعلن	scam	غش / خداع
arrange	يرتب	digital	رقمي
transfer	يحول	repair	يصلح
pay	يدفع	archaeologist	عالم آثار
advertisement	اعلان	inventions	اختراعات
technology	تكنولوجيا	invest	يستثمر

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. Egypt is an.....country.

- a. European                      b. Asian                      c. Arab                      d. American

2. There about 50 million internet.....in Egypt.

- a. users                      b. thieves                      c. letters                      d. seeds

3. There are always new.....in technology.

- a. developments                      b. information                      c. equipment                      d. news

4. Some jobs.....high skills.

- a. sells                      b. steal                      c. rob                      d. require

5. To find a job, you need to use.....media.

- a. sociable                      b. social                      c. ancient                      d. old

6. Communicating by.....is a modern way.

- a. pigeon                      b. horses                      c. fax                      d. email

7. The secretary always.....the interviews for our company.

- a. range                      b. charges                      c. arranges                      d. merge

8. We can use our mobiles to.....money.

- a. transport                      b. transmit                      c. transplant                      d. transfer

9. To have the latest technology, you could buy a.....phone.

- a. small                      b. ancient                      c. lazy                      d. smart

10. During the interview, the.....asked me about my skills.

- a. interviewee                      b. interviewing                      c. interview                      d. interviewer



11. We should know the.....technology in all fields.

- a. late                      b. lately                      c. recently                      d. latest

12. Companies.....their products on TV.

- a. mend                      b. lend                      c. advertise                      d. feed

13. Technology is.....all the time.

- a. charging                      b. changing                      c. sleeping                      d. standing still

14. To arrange is to make.....for something to happen.

- a. plates                      b. plains                      c. planes                      d. plans

15. Making something bigger or better is to.....

- a. kill                      b. will                      c. develop                      d. boil

16. ....work is done by hand.

- a. Electronic                      b. Automatic                      c. Manual                      d. Annual

17. He lost his leg in a terrible.....

- a. accident                      b. accent                      c. recent                      d. events

18. Many people use social networking.....

- a. sides                      b. sites                      c. sails                      d. walls

19. To.....means to let.

- a. disagree                      b. refuse                      c. allow                      d. reject

20. I .....that it will be hot tomorrow.

- a. except                      b. expect                      c. respect                      d. predicts

21. I am reading a.....on the internet.

- a. idea                      b. report                      c. email                      d. ebook

22. Many people have.....to use the internet.

- a. Smartphones                      b. glasses                      c. eyes                      d. gloves

23. Egypt has the highest number of internet users in the Arab.....

- a. earth                      b. field                      c. world                      d. worry

24. On the internet, we must be.....

- a. careless                      b. sad                      c. unhappy                      d. careful

25. A.....is a bad example of people.

- a. robber                      b. friendly                      c. volunteer                      d. engineer

26. The place where you live is your.....

- a. dress                      b. title                      c. address                      d. press

27. The thieves.....much money from the bank.

- a. stole                      b. robbed                      c. speed                      d. spoke

28. My father always gives me useful.....to solve my problems.

- a. advise                      b. advice                      c. pens                      d. furniture



29. To stay safe on the internet, you must use.....setting.

- a. privacy                      b. unsafe                      c. size                      d. sum

30. Sixty-four -----of Egyptians have Smartphones .

- a. recent                      b. percent                      c. cent                      d. accent

31. More and more people have problems -----scam.

- a. under                      b. within                      c. for                      d. with

32. The thieves----- the bank and ran away.

- a. painted                      b. stole                      c. robbed                      d. insulted

33. We read about some interesting -----in science on a website.

- a. fashion                      b. failure                      c. develops                      d. developments

34. Privacy ----- on social networking sites make sure that only people who you know can see information about you.

- a. settings                      b. sized                      c. prizes                      d. rises

35. We saw famous paintings in the new art-----

- a. pool                      b. gallery                      c. broacher                      d. bank

36. The Sphinx is a famous----- that tourists visit.

- a. tomb                      b. temple                      c. monument                      d. stadium

37. All monuments should be-----

- a. robbed                      b. stolen                      c. protected                      d. destroyed

38. A team of.....are going to dig a new site to look for ancient objects.

- a. pilots                      b. archaeologists                      c. astronomers                      d. astrologers

39. The.....of the temple are destroyed because many tourists walk on them.

- a. walls                      b. wheels                      c. ceilings                      d. floors

40. There are many ancient.....in Luxor.

- a. tomb                      b. temples                      c. king                      d. monument

### تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1 – You should study hard. (If I were you)

2 – If I were them, I wouldn't come late. (shouldn't)

3 – He isn't tall so he can't play basketball. (If)





4 – He arrived late so he missed the plane. (If)

5 – Perhaps if we see the teacher, we can tell her the truth. (might)

6 – Ali didn't study hard so he failed. (If)

7 – I didn't say hello because I didn't recognize you (If)

8 – Study hard or you will fail. (If)

9 – If he had played well, he wouldn't have lost. (so)

10 – If he arrives early, he will catch the bus. (Unless)

### Model Exam unit (15)

#### 1. Finish the following dialogue

Ali and Dina are talking about an internet report

Ali: (1)-----?

Dina: I am reading a report on the internet.

Ali: (2) -----?

Dina: It is about The Egyptians and the internet.

Ali: What else does it say?

Dina: (3) -----.

Ali: Really! so why we shouldn't give our personal information to others.

Dina: Because they might be thieves.

Ali: (4) ----- . Thank you.

#### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. You want to encourage your friend to tell you more about the internet.

2 . You are asked about your favourite social site.

3 . You give your opinion of the internet.

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

A tourist has been found after spending five days in the desert. He went for a walk and must have got lost. He was delighted when a farmer found him. The farmer gave him water and told him that he should have taken a phone and lots of water into the desert. Then the farmer took him to a hospital. When he got **there**, a doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water, but said that he was not hurt. We interviewed the tourist when he got home. He asked us to thank the farmer and the doctors. He said that if he went to the desert again, he would be much more careful.

#### A. Answer the following questions

1. What happened to the tourist when he went for a walk?
2. Why do you think the farmer said that he should have taken a phone?
3. What did the doctor say that the tourist should do?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4. What do you think the word **delighted** means?

- a . very thirsty      b . very happy      c . very sad      d . very ill

5. What does the underlined word **there** refer to?

- a . the hospital      b . the farm      c . the man's home      d . the desert

The Reader

#### 4. Match column "A" with column "B"

(A)		(B)
1 . Jerry		a . went out with the taxi carriage in the morning.
2 . Captain		b . was accused of stealing the horses` food.
3 . Lady Smythe		c . an old farmer.
4 . Filcher		d . became ill because he got so cold and tired
		e . liked her horses to use special reins.

#### 5. Answer the following questions

1. How do you know that Jerry cares about horses?
2. Why did a vet come to look at Black Beauty?

**6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d**

**1. To move someone or something from one place to another means-----**

- a. transfusion                      b. transmit                      c. translate                      d. transfer**

**2. Have you read about the latest----- in computers?**

- a. develop                      b. development                      c. develops                      d. developed**

**3. There is an ----- in the newspaper for a new computer game.**

- a. advertisement                      b. idea                      c. robbery                      d. book**

**4. It is a ----- that all manual workers wear boots.**

- a. will                      b. theft                      c. require                      d. requirement**

**5. Our teacher always -----us to do better.**

- a. lies                      b. discourages                      c. encourages                      d. makes**

**6. The place where you live is your.....**

- a. dress                      b. title                      c. address                      d. press**

**7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning**

**1. He arrives late so he misses the bus. (If)**

**2. He can't play basketball because He isn't tall . (If)**

**3. If he studied hard, he would succeed. (so)**

**8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on....**

**"Modern technology"**





## Unit (16)

### Key words أهم كلمات الوحدة

grasshopper	الجراد	foolish	أحمق
content	قانع / راضي	moral	درس مستفاد
enough	كاف	terrible	فظيع / سيء
wise	حكيم	believe	يصدق / يؤمن
goose	أوزة	surprised	مندهش
gold	ذهب	worried	قلق
golden	ذهبي	contents	محتويات
greedy	طماع	wonderful	رائع
refuse	قمامة / يرفض	owner	مالك

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. In summer, Ants.....money for winter.

- a. correct      b. saves      c. collect      d. raises

2. A.....person doesn't know what to do well.

- a. clever      b. intelligent      c. smart      d. foolish

3. The weather is always.....in winter.

- a. hot      b. sunny      c. cold      d. wonderful

4. We should.....wise words.

- a. forget      b. remember      c. unfollow      d. neglect

5. If you don't eat well, you will be.....

- a. full      b. angry      c. thirsty      d. hungry

6. The goose is a bird that lays.....

- a. eggs      b. animals      c. eagles      d. whales

7. He decided.....his mobile phone.

- a. sells      b. selling      c. to sell      d. sold

8. The.....egg looks like gold.

- a. wooden      b. silver      c. boiled      d. golden

9. Doors are made of.....

- a. paper      b. wool      c. wood      d. leaves

10. Farmers usually sell their products at the.....

- a. market      b. observatory      c. cinema      d. castle



11. The goose died when the farmer.....it.  
a. washed                      b. killed                      c. protected                      d. helped
12. He took all the money and left us nothing, he is.....  
a. wise                      b. helpful                      c. greedy                      d. honest
13. A goose can.....in water.  
a. swim                      b. sings                      c. walks                      d. sleeps
14. I don't need more. This rice is.....  
a. enough                      b. less                      c. little                      d. few
15. We should.....well for our future.  
a. play                      b. plate                      c. black                      d. plan
16. A story with a.....tells us something useful.  
a. picture                      b. moral                      c. flower                      d. titles
17. A wise man always gives people..... for live.  
a. advice                      b. money                      c. eggs                      d. roots
18. ....means happy and satisfied.  
a. Angry                      b. Hungry                      c. Content                      d. Continent
19. The ..... of the film was that crime does not pay.  
a. moral                      b. goals                      c. aims                      d. results
20. He became rich when he found many.....eggs.  
a. boiled                      b. damaged                      c. poisonous                      d. golden
21. I haven't seen my friend for.....time.  
a. a long                      b. along                      c. shorts                      d. alonger
22. How.....! I have lost my mobile.  
a. wonderful                      b. exciting                      c. interesting                      d. terrible
23. The thief.....so they police are looking for him.  
a. caught                      b. arrested                      c. escaped                      d. melted
24. This impossible, I can't.....it.  
a. believe                      b. belief                      c. believer                      d. believed
25. ....means rubbish.  
a. Agree                      b. Disagree                      c. Remember                      d. Refuse
26. A.....protects his country from enemies.  
a. soldier                      b. singer                      c. dancer                      d. thief
27. ....is very important to do a project.  
a. Tools                      b. equipment                      c. Pens                      d. Books

28. We will go .....

- a. ride                      b. to riding                      c. for a ride                      d. for riding

29. I have been away .....holiday.

- a. by                      b. on                      c. beyond                      d. in

30. You mustn't take the .....of anyone's bag.

- a. continue                      b. contents                      c. design                      d. plane

31. I don't have enough money, I will.....some from my father.

- a. lend                      b. steal                      c. rob                      d. borrow

32. You should think more.....if you have a problem.

- a. careless                      b. angry                      c. carefully                      d. carelessly

33. Try to find one possible.....for this quiz.

- a. answer                      b. solutions                      c. keys                      d. replies

34. Something.....means very bad.

- a. wonderful                      b. amazing                      c. terrible                      d. interesting

35. I got the best mark so my dad said.....

- a. How terrible                      b. well done                      c. what a pity                      d. How bad

36. Thieves always.....people's possessions.

- a. return                      b. protect                      c. steal                      d. save

37. The lifeguard saved the boy who.....into the canal.

- a. fell                      b. wrote                      c. lived                      d. studied

38. To.....is to take something and return it.

- a. steal                      b. melt                      c. borrow                      d. lend

39. He.....up a story so that his teacher wouldn't punish him.

- a. made                      b. sold                      c. designed                      d. robbed

40. She wears a golden.....around her neck.

- a. ring                      b. sword                      c. dress                      d. necklace

## تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following using the word(s) on brackets to give the same meaning

1. First he watched TV, then he ate lunch. (After)

2. After they had cooked lunch, Ali arrived. (before)





3. As soon as he had arrived, the train left. (**Having**)
4. They didn't eat. They hadn't bought food. (**because**)
5. Before he went to school, he had packed his bag. ( **After**)
6. He had a shower then watched TV. (**As soon as**)
7. Before he read the story, he had borrowed it. (**reading**)
8. Mona cooked dinner. They ate it. (**After**)
9. Having written the e-mail, she posted it. (**By the time**)
10. He didn't go out without taking the money. (**until**)

### Model Exam unit (16)

#### 1. Finish the following dialogue

A tourist wants to go to the pyramids

- Ayman : Hello . How can I help you ?  
Tourist : ( 1 ) ..... ?  
Ayman : Go along This street . the pyramids at its end .  
Tourist : But I don't know this street very well .  
Ayman : ( 2 ) .....  
Tourist : That's a great idea . ( 3 ) ..... ?  
Ayman : I think you should pay 50 pounds for the taxi drivers .  
Tourist : This is very cheap . Thanks a lot .  
Ayman : ( 4 ) .....



## 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. Your friend has passed his exam.
2. You heard that your uncle had an accident.
3. Your sister has had a new baby.

## 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

Some people say that horses can be good friends if they are treated well and with great care. Horses are beautiful animals which can run fast for long distances. People like watching them because they are strong and powerful. They have long legs and big eyes that they can see almost all the way around them. We can know how old a horse is by looking at its teeth. Horses can live up to 20 to 25 years and generally sleep standing up, in this way if they are attacked by animals they can run away fast. Horses don't need much sleep; they only sleep about three or four hours a day. They like eating corn, grass, hay and sometimes apples and carrots.

### A. Answer the following questions

- 1- What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
- 2- How long can horses live?
- 3- Why do you think people like to make friends with horses?

### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4. Horses' big eyes help them to .....

- |                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| a . run fast          | b . see well            |
| c . sleep standing up | d . live up to 20 to 25 |

5. Horses have ..... and strong eyes

- |               |                |              |              |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| a . long legs | b . short legs | c . fat legs | d . big legs |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|



4. Match column "A" with column "B"

1. Lady Anne		a. owned a taxi carriage and another horse called Captain.
2. Skinner		b. was Black Beauty's best friend.
3. Jerry		c. liked to ride Black Beauty around the park.
4. Ginger		d. Said that Black Beauty was no good if he couldn't work.
		e. was a young horse at Earlshall park.

5. Answer the following questions

1. Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on black Beauty's first morning in London?
2. Why did Black feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. A story with a moral has a .....  
a. message      b. sad ending      c. happy ending      d. no ending
2. It is a good idea to ask a wise person for .....  
a. food      b. wonders      c. money      d. advice
3. If you want to.....your friend's laptop, you should ask first.  
a. borrow      b. steal      c. rob      d. kill
4. The word content means .....  
a. happy      b. sad      c. not happy      d. angry
5. A snake had .....and nobody knew where it was.  
a. escaped      b. killed      c. died      d. sold
6. . I don't have enough money, I will.....some from my father.  
a. lend      b. steal      c. rob      d. borrow



**7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning**

**1. First he watched TV, then he ate lunch. (After)**

**2. They didn't eat. They hadn't bought food. (because)**

**3. He didn't go out without taking the money. (until)**

**8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on....**

**" A story with a moral "**

## Unit (17)

Key words أهم كلمات الوحدة

dinosaur	ديناصور	erupt	يثور
fossils	حفريات	melt	يذوب
die out	ينقرض	clay	صلصال
theory	نظرية	Ice Age	العصر الجليدي
meteorite	نيزك	Stone Age	العصر الحجري
volcano	بركان	guide	مرشد
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	farming	الزراعة
documentary	فيلم وثائقي	protect	يحمي

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. ....died out millions of years ago.

- a. Ducks                      b. Whales                      c. Dinosaurs                      d. Snakes

2. There were many.....of dinosaurs.

- a. crew                      b. staff                      c. kinds                      d. group

3. There are many reasons that made dinosaurs.....

- a. disappear                      b. suicide                      c. sing                      d. hack

4. Some people have.....a terrible disease.

- a. caught                      b. bought                      c. mended                      d. faxed

5. A huge.....hit the earth and exploded.

- a. sun                      b. moon                      c. racket                      d. meteorite

6. There is a.....that the city disappeared after an earthquake.

- a. theory                      b. plans                      c. ideas                      d. supposes

7. What would .....if you lost your money? - I would borrow some.

- a. do                      b. happy                      c. happen                      d. stay

8. I couldn't breathe because the room was full of.....

- a. smoke                      b. smile                      c. air                      d. lights

9. When volcanoes.....they may cause earthquakes.

- a. sleep                      b. disappear                      c. erupt                      d. feed

10. By studying....., scientists have discovered that dinosaurs died out 65 millions of years ago.

- a. astronomy                      b. muscles                      c. fossils                      d. pollution



11. Without the sun, there would be no.....on Earth.

- a. dinosaurs                      b. plates                      c. rocks                      d. life

12. What is the.....for her death?

- a. seasons                      b. reason                      c. results                      d. causes

13. My father arrived late so he didn't.....his plane.

- a. catch                      b. lose                      c. miss                      d. feed

14. "How.....ago?" is the same as "when"

- a. much                      b. many                      c. often                      d. long

15. An earthquake erupted and there were lots of dust and gas in the.....

- a. atmosphere                      b. internet                      c. ingredients                      d. wonderland

16. ....means to disappear forever.

- a. Die out                      b. Transport                      c. Stay                      d. Travel

17. It is just a....., it may be true or not.

- a. fact                      b. truth                      c. idea                      d. theory

18. Dinosaurs disappeared when the.....changed.

- a. feather                      b. whether                      c. weather                      d. leather

19. ....are animals that look like small crocodiles.

- a. Dinosaurs                      b. Sharks                      c. Whales                      d. Lizards

20. Stopped living means.....

- a. appear                      b. showed                      c. sailed                      d. died out

1. People used bones to----- clothes .

- a. sew                      b. sow                      c. sue                      d. due

2. ....have found cave art in different places.

- a. Doctors                      b. Nurses                      c. Archaeologists                      d. Teachers

3. People learnt to ----- things with stone.

- a. does                      b. building                      c. make                      d. formed

4. People made.....to keep warm.

- a. fight                      b. fire                      c. films                      d. fans

5. This hotel is the tallest----- in the city.

- a. building                      b. book                      c. bridge                      d. river

6. How long did it take them to ----- the Qasr al-Nile Bridge?

- a. build                      b. buy                      c. sell                      d. cook

7. Hippos live in big-----of 30 or more.

- a. groups                      b. classes                      c. rooms                      d. bags

8. The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden----- on the beach.

- a. shells                      b. Pens                      c. huts                      d. books





9. Abdou stopped and rested in a ----- when he was climbing the mountain.

- a. hotel                      b. motel                      c. villa                      d. cave

10. ....is important because it gives us food to eat.

- a. Trade                      b. Industry                      c. Farming                      d. Tourism

11. The Stone -----was about 8,000 years ago.

- a. Ago                      b. Eagle                      c. century                      d. Age

12. A period of 100 years is a .....

- a. decade                      b. century                      c. area                      d. millennium

13. We saw dinosaurs during our visit to the.....museum.

- a. Arabic                      b. history                      c. game                      d. mummies

14. ....are scientists who look for objects from the past.

- a. Archaeologists                      b. Teachers                      c. Astronomers                      d. Astronauts

15. A.....door is made of wood.

- a. woolen                      b. plastic                      c. metal                      d. wooden

16. The bird can't fly because its.....is broken.

- a. eye                      b. wing                      c. leather                      d. feather

17. Plants need water and.....to grow.

- a. gas                      b. sun light                      c. sun cream                      d. sunset

18. We should.....our environment.

- a. destroy                      b. feed                      c. damage                      d. protect

19. Wheat is a kind of.....

- a. crops                      b. baskets                      c. subjects                      d. sports

20. ....are dangerous animals.

- a. Ducks                      b. Lions                      c. Goats                      d. Hens

### تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following using the word(s) on brackets to give the same meaning

1. I didn't know the answer, so I didn't tell you. (If)

2. I didn't have more money, so I didn't buy the expensive toy. (If)

3. He didn't get high marks because he didn't study hard. (If)

4. You should study hard. (If I were you)
5. If you didn't arrive early, you would miss the train. (Unless)
6. If Ali had played well, he would have won. (because)
7. He arrived early, so he caught the metro. (if)
8. Unless she had cooked, they would have eaten out. (If)
9. If I were them, I wouldn't sell the car. (shouldn't)
10. Because my father drove me to school, I arrived on time. (If)

### Model Exam unit (17)

#### 1. Finish the following dialogue

Ali and Sama are talking about dinosaurs

Ali: (1)-----?

Sama: Dinosaurs lived on earth 150 million years ago.

Ali: Can we see them now?

Sama: (2)----- They died out.

Ali: (3)-----?

Sama: The fossils show that there were more than 700 kinds of dinosaurs.

Ali: I think they were enormous animals.

Sama: (4)-----

#### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. You ask your friend when people first lived on earth.
2. You hear that your favourite team has just won the cup .
3. Ask your friend politely about the job he would like to do.



### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

An engineer had worked hard for a building company. When the engineer got older, he decided to stop working. He wanted to relax. The owner of the company asked him to do one last job for the company. It was to build a beautiful house. The engineer agreed but he wasn't interested in doing his work well. He didn't use good building materials. He didn't think about the safety of the people who would live in that house. He only wanted to finish the job earlier to enjoy rest of his life. When he finished, the house appeared beautiful but wasn't well-built. On his last day in the company, in front of all people, the owner of the company gave him the key of the house and said: "This is for you; you worked hard for the company and we want to give you a reward. The new house which you have built is yours."

#### A. Answer the following questions

1- What was the engineer's decision when he got older?

2- What was the engineer's last job for the company?

3- How was the new house?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4- The underlined word " him " refers to .....

a . the key                      b . the engineer                      c . all people                      d . the company

5- The company wanted to ..... the engineer.

a . reward                      b . punish                      c . stop                      d . refuse

#### The Reader

#### 4. Match column "A" with column "B"

(A)		(B)
1 . The doctor		a . had easier work in the end .
2 . Black Beauty		b . told Jerry that he had to stop driving a taxi .
3 . Harry		c . was accused of stealing the horses' food .
4 . Flicher		d . was a rich man .
		e . was Jerry's son .



## 5. Answer the following questions

1. Why was it difficult for Black Beauty to pull a taxi in London ?

2. Why do you think Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger ?

## 6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. A ..... is a rock which comes from space.

- a. meteorite                      b. cell                      c. shell                      d. lion

2. The ideas we are not sure about are called .....

- a. subjects                      b. hobbies                      c. theories                      d. castles

3. When a volcano ..... it throws out smoke and fire .

- a. erupts                      b. sings                      c. swims                      d. claps

4. What was the----- of the accident?

- a. sword                      b. planet                      c. cause                      d. plant

5. Dinosaurs are animals which have ..... out.

- a. died                      b. sat                      c. written                      d. studied

6. ....is important because it gives us food to eat.

- a. Trade                      b. Industry                      c. Farming                      d. Tourism

## 7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. I didn't know the answer, so I didn't tell you. (If)

2. He didn't get high marks because he didn't study hard. (If)

3. If Ali had played well, he would have won. (because)

## 8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on....

"What made dinosaurs die out"



## Unit (18)

أهم كلمات الوحدة Key words

snorkelling	الغطس بأنبوب تنفس	diver	غواص
coral	مرجان	excitement	اثارة
shark	سمكة القرش	wreck	حطام السفينة
special	خاص	instructor	معلم / مرشد
sea life	الحياة البحرية	relief	ارتياح
stingray	سمك الراي الالاسع	turtles	سلاحف
rough	هائج	weather	الطقس
reef	مرجان	equipment	معدات

### تمارين على الكلمات

1. Ras Mohamed is a.....park in Egypt.

- a. international      b. ugly      c. national      d. important

2. The Red Sea is a good place for.....

- a. flying      b. diving      c. driving      d. stealing

3. We couldn't dive because the sea was cold and.....

- a. rough      b. quiet      c. amazing      d. worm

4. Diving and.....are water sports.

- a. horse riding      b. mountain climbing      c. trekking      d. snorkelling

5. The Red Sea is famous for its wonderful.....

- a. oceans      b. coral      c. choir      d. chairs

6. ....are fun to swim with.

- a. Sharks      b. Crocodiles      c. Lions      d. Dolphins

7. I met my friend on my.....to school.

- a. address      b. title      c. roads      d. way

8. I have a special.....to take amazing photos.

- a. pen      b. glasses      c. Camera      d. photocopier

9. There are many kinds of fish at the.....of the sea.

- a. right      b. button      c. lift      d. bottom

10. ....is made of very small animals that live together in groups.

- a. Coral      b. Moral      c. Polar      d. Leaves

11. Let's go swimming. This means let's go for.....

- a. a swim      b. swims      c. swam      d. swimming



12. Some snacks are good.....health.

- a. at                                      b. on                                      c. to                                      d. for

13. A.....is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.

- a. octopus                                      b. elephant                                      c. duck                                      d. stingray

14. Dolphins are helpful and.....animals.

- a. lazy                                      b. intelligent                                      c. rich                                      d. stupid

15. The sea is not rough, it is.....

- a. noisy                                      b. terrible                                      c. horrible                                      d. calm

16. ....was used for writing by the ancient Egyptians.

- a. Reef                                      b. Beef                                      c. Deaf                                      d. Papyrus

17. The.....was closed so we couldn't buy bread.

- a. cinema                                      b. theatre                                      c. stadium                                      d. bakery

18. He is .....and can solve any problem.

- a. intelligent                                      b. tall                                      c. short                                      d. stupid

19. Some animals live.....in groups.

- a. gather                                      b. together                                      c. lonely                                      d. late

20. Summer is my favourite.....

- a. reason                                      b. season                                      c. year                                      d. century

21. We got a diving.....to help us dive.

- a. instructor                                      b. tractor                                      c. factor                                      d. projector

22. We should keep the beaches.....

- a. clean                                      b. polluted                                      c. dirty                                      d. refuse

23. It was a----- to hear that nobody was hurt in the accident.

- a. belief                                      b. sadness                                      c. relief                                      d. anger

24. When they were diving, they saw the ----- of an old ship.

- a. desk                                      b. disc                                      c. wreck                                      d. risk

25. Sharks are----- sea animals.

- a. tame                                      b. dangerous                                      c. pet                                      d. funny

26. I ----- diving three times a month.

- a. play                                      b. do                                      c. go                                      d. did

27. ...., he lost the last match.

- a. Happily                                      b. Fortunately                                      c. Unfortunately                                      d. Luckily

28. We can't go diving without our diving-----

- a. book                                      b. equipment                                      c. hobbies                                      d. pens



29. We are going to the ----- where we can see some sharks.  
 a. balcony                      b. Toilets                      c. Fun Fair                      d. Shark Reef
30. Diving is not dangerous, but you must be-----  
 a. sad                      b. careless                      c. careful                      d. ill
31. I am looking forward to----- them.  
 a. meeting                      b. met                      c. meet                      d. meets
32. The water is dirty, for this ----- he won't drink it.  
 a. reason                      b. season                      c. treasure                      d. goodness
33. The -----was very bad so we stayed at home.  
 a. water                      b. weather                      c. leather                      d. whether
34. They went on a-----yesterday.  
 a. dive                      b. driving                      c. diving                      d. swimming
35. -----is important for diving.  
 a. Ships                      b. Equipment                      c. Instructors                      d. Divers
36. Cows live-----grass.  
 a. in                      b. on                      c. off                      d. of
37. Sharks and whales are-----animals.  
 a. tame                      b. sea                      c. land                      d. space
38. Don't worry if you haven't swum before. The ----- will show you what to do.  
 a. firefighter                      b. instructor                      c. dentist                      d. doctor
39. There many kinds of-----like stingray.  
 a. fuel                      b. coral                      c. birds                      d. fish
40. They felt-----when the shark attacked the boat.  
 a. happy                      b. interesting                      c. frightened                      d. frightening

### تمارين على الجرامر

Rewrite the following using the word(s) on brackets to give the same meaning

- 1 – You ought to arrive early. (If)
- 2 – Unless she had studied hard, she would have failed. (If)
- 3 – He didn't win because he was lazy. (If)



4 – If Ali had had time, he would have visited his uncle. (**because**)

5 – If she had been careful, she wouldn't have made the accident. (**so**)

6 – If he doesn't play well, he might lose. (**Unless**)

7 – Arriving early will help you pass. (**If**)

8 – If he didn't study hard, he wouldn't come first. (**Unless**)

9 – If I were Ali, I would help them. ( **should**)

10 – If he was rich, he would buy a car. (**had**)

## Model Exam unit (18)

### 1. Finish the following dialogue

Some tourists and a diving instructor

**Tourist:** (1)-----?

**Instructor:** We are going to the Shark Reef.

**Tourist:** How amazing!

**Instructor:** Have any of you swum near sharks before?

**Tourist:** (2)----- It is the first time.

**Instructor:** Well, listen carefully, you (3)-----

**Tourist :** Ok, we will never come near it. (4)-----?

**Instructor:** Yes, it is very dangerous to get close a hungry shark.

### 2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. Your father tells you that you can go to the beach.

2. You want to know what your friend thinks of the English lesson.

3. You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which help many people.



### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions

Mark who started the social networking site Facebook was born in 1984 in New York. Mark first became interested in computers at the age of twelve. Then he invented a communication program. Mark's family used it to send messages to each other at home. His father, who was a dentist, also used it at work. At school, was very good at English, sports and other subjects, but he was most interested in computers. He won prizes in science, maths and astronomy. When he went to university, he started working on a system which he developed into Facebook. About two hundred and fifty million users are sharing information on Facebook every day.

#### A. Answer the following questions

1 - When did Mark first become interested in computers ?

2 - What subjects was he very good at ?

3 - Do you like Facebook ? Why / Why not ?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4 . The main idea of the passage is that .....

a . Mark's father was a dentist.

b . Mark was from New York

c . Mark invented a popular social networking site.

d . Mark was born in 1984

5 - The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....

a . school

b . work

c . home

d . communication program

### The Reader

#### 4. Match column "A" with column "B"

(A)		(B)
1 - Polly		a . was a young horse at Earlshall park .
2 - Miss Blomefield		b . was the man who worked for Earl Smythe .
3 - Lizzie		c . was Jerry's wife .
4 - York		d . was Jerry's child .
		e . was the woman who lived in the country with her two sisters



### 5. Answer the following questions

1. Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her ?
2. Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger Because Black Beauty was hurt ?  
Why / Why not ?

### 6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Don't go diving when the sea is.....  
a. clean                      b. quiet                      c. calm                      d. rough
2. .... is a group of animals that live together in large groups.  
a. coral                      b. comma                      c. books                      d. wheat
3. A..... is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.  
a. bee                      b. shark                      c. stingray                      d. hippo
4. ....are very intelligent. They often jump out of the water in front of our boat.  
a. Dolphins                      b. Elephants                      c. Lions                      d. Horses
5. The ..... said he saw some beautiful coral under the sea.  
a. banker                      b. doorman                      c. driver                      d. diver
6. He is .....and can solve any problem.  
a. intelligent                      b. tall                      c. short                      d. stupid

### 7. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. You ought to arrive early. (If)
- 2 – Unless she had studied hard, she would have failed. (If)
- 3 – He didn't win because he was lazy. (If)

### 8. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on....

"Water sports"



## سؤال المحادثة في الامتحان

### مراجعته ليلة الامتحان السؤال الأول المحادثة dialogue

يمكن تقسيم الأسئلة الى

(1) سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد ويسمى (Yes, or No Question)

(2) سؤال يبدأ بكلمة استفهام ويسمى (Wh Question)

(3) سؤال التخيير ويوجد به كلمة (or) ويسمى (Or question)

(4) السؤال المزيل ويسمى (Tag question)

#### أولا السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد (Yes, or No Question)

هو السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد ويكون معناه هل وتكون اجابته اما بـ (Yes) وإما بـ (No) ويتكون السؤال كالآتي

؟ باقي السؤال + فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد

1. Will you buy the car?

Yes, I will. / No, I won't (اجابة مختصرة)

Yes, I will buy the car. (اجابة كاملة)

No, I won't buy the car.

2. Has he written the e-mail?

Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.

Yes, he has written the e-mail.

No, he hasn't written the e-mail.

3. Is she reading the book?

Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

Yes, she is reading the book.

No, she isn't reading the book.

ملاحظة هامة

إذا جاء الفعل المساعد (Do / Does / Did) يتم حذفهم عند الاجابة الكاملة في الاثبات

1. Do you like English?

Yes, I do. / No I don't.

Yes, I like English.

No, I don't like English.

## 2. Does he like English?

Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

Yes, he likes English.

لاحظ انه عندما نحذف كلمة (Does) نضيف للفعل (s-es-ies) عند الاجابة المثبتة كما في الاجابة السابقة

No, he doesn't like English.

## 3. Did he like English?

Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.

Yes, he liked English.

لاحظ انه عندما نحذف كلمة (Did) يأتي الفعل ماضي بسيط عند الاجابة المثبتة كما في الاجابة السابقة

No, he didn't like English.

### ثانيا : السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام (WH Question)

هو السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة او كلمة استفهام وتكون الاجابة على اداة الاستفهام ويتكون كالاتي

? باقي السؤال + فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + اداة استفهام

### Examples

#### 1. When will they arrive?

They will arrive at 5 o'clock.

#### 2. Where do you live?

I live in Cairo.

#### 3. How does he go to school?

He goes to school by car.

#### 4. Why did you study hard?

I studied hard because I wanted to get high marks.

I studied hard to get high marks.

#### 5. How long have you played football?

I have played football for 2 hours?

أهم أدوات الاستفهام

1. How

كيف / وتسأل عن الحال وكذلك وسائل المواصلات

2. Where

أين / وتسأل عن المكان





3. When	متى / تسأل عن الوقت
4. What	ما / ماذا / تسأل عن غير العاقل
5. Why	لماذا / تسأل عن السبب
6. Whose	لمن / ملك من / تسأل عن الملكية
7. Who	من / تسأل عن الفاعل العاقل
8. Which	أي / تسأل عن غير العاقل والتخيير
9. How long	كم المدة / تسأل عن المدة الزمنية

### أسئلة عامة

1. What is your name?	ما اسمك؟
2. How old are you?	كم عمرك؟
3. What is your favourite.....?	ما هو..... المفضل؟
4. How much is /are .....?	كم سعر؟
5. What price is / are.....?	كم سعر / ثمن .....؟
6. What colour is it?	ما لون؟
7. What is your nationality?	ما هي جنسيتك؟
8. What size is the .....?	ما حجم / مقاس...؟
9. How tall are you?	كم طولك.....؟
10. What do you think of.....? = What is your opinion.....?	ما رأيك في .....؟

## مراجعته ليلة الامتحان السؤال الثاني سؤال المواقف situations

### Unit (10)

### Function Box

Buying/Booking a train ticket شراء وحجز التذاكر	
Can I book a single / return (ticket to Alexandria), please?	هل يمكن أن أحجز.....؟
Would you like first or second class?	هل تريد درجة أولى او اقتصادية ...؟
How long does (the express train) take?	كم سيستغرق القطار السريع؟
How much is that, please?	كم ثمن.....؟
Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?	هل يمكن أن تخبرني أي رصيف يغادر من القطار؟

## Unit (11)

### Function Box

expressing past recommendations	التوصيات في الماضي
I think you should have tried (the pizza) last night.	
You shouldn't have drunk (so much coffee) yesterday.	
explaining a choice in the past	توضيح سبب اختيار في الماضي
I really didn't want to (eat pizza). It's not healthy.	
I wasn't interested, thanks.	
expressing regret in the past	التعبير عن الندم في الماضي
I really shouldn't have (smoked that cigarette) because	

## Unit (12)

### Function Box

Making opinions stronger اعطاء رأي قوي
<p>These people can be quite angry if their train is late. A railway station manager's job is very important. Most of them work really hard. Sometimes I have to help with extremely big problems</p>

## Unit (13)

### Function Box

Asking polite questions الأسئلة المهيبة	
Could you please explain to me why (I can't feel the earth turn)?	
I wonder if you could tell me what (a star is made of).	
I'd like to know if (you like your job).	
Do you think we could (come and see the observatory one day)?	

## Unit (14)

### Function Box

Asking for opinion السؤال عن الرأي	Expressing agreement / disagreement
<p>What do you think of (the Sphinx)? How do you feel about (the Cairo Tower)? Do you agree?</p>	<p>I couldn't agree with you more. That's (exactly) how I feel. You have a point there - I'm afraid I (totally) disagree. - I feel completely the opposite</p>

## Unit (15)

### Function Box

encouraging people to continue speaking	تشجيع الناس على اكمال الكلام
Great! What else does it say? Really? Go on. How wonderful! Tell me more. Then what happened? What happened after that?	

## Unit (16)

### Function Box

Responding to news ما نقوله عند سماع أي خبر	
⇒ How wonderful! /what good new!	عند سماع أخبار جيدة
⇒ Really! I can't believe it!	good news
⇒ Oh dear! /what bad news	عند سماع أخبار سيئة
⇒ Oh no!	bad news
⇒ How terrible!	

## Unit (17)

### Function Box

Giving dates you are not sure ofالتحدث عن تواريخ لسنا متأكدين منها	
⇒ (Dinosaurs lived) about 65 million years ago.	
⇒ (We think that people first lived) maybe 250,000 years ago	
⇒ (I'm going to talk to you about some people who lived) almost 8,000 years ago.	
⇒ In around 8,000 BCE, (people began farming in North Africa)	

## Unit (18)

### Function Box

Showing relief الشعور بالراحة أو الاطمئنان	Showing excitement التعبير عن الاثارة
Phew!	Great!
What a relief!	I can't wait!
Thank goodness for that!	I'm looking forward to that.



## أهم الاسئلة النقدية للقصة

1. **Why** do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking ?
- 2 - **What** do you think of Skinner ?
- 3 - **Why** do you think Black Beauty felt sorry for both the horses and their drivers?
- 4 - **Why** do you think the reins were uncomfortable?
- 5 - **How** do you know that Jerry cares about horses?
- 6 - **Why** did a vet come to look at Black Beauty?
- 7 - **How** was Jerry kind to the poor woman?
- 8 - **Do you think** that Skinner was right to sell Black Beauty? Why / Why not?
- 9 - **Do you think** Filcher deserved to be arrested ? Why / Why not ?
- 10 - **Why** do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her ?
11. **How** did Ginger and Black beauty become hurt ?
12. **Why** do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags ?
13. **Do you think** the story had a happy ending ? How ?
14. **In your opinion** , how should people treat the animals that work for them ?
- 15 - **why** was it impossible for the horses to pull the carriage up a hill?
- 16 - **How** did Black Beauty feel when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?
- 17 - **Why** didn't Jerry take money from the old woman?
- 18 - **Why** do you think that jerry became ill?

- 19 - **Why** do you think Ginger stopped kicking people who weren't good to her ?
- 20 - **Who** was Skinner, and why was he a bad owner ?
21. **Why** did Black feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?
22. **Why** do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on black Beauty`s first morning in London?
23. **What do you think** of the two men who jumped into the taxi before the poor woman?
24. **What do you think** might have happened if Black Beauty continued to work for skinner a long time?
- 25 - **Do you think** that Skinner was a bad owner ? Why ?
26. **Do you think** that Filcher deserved to be arrested ? Why ?
- 27 - **Why** do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her ?
- 28 - **Do you think** that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger Because Black Beauty was hurt ? Why / Why not ?
29. **Do you think** that the poor woman was pleased with Jerry Barker? Why?
30. **Why** do you think that the people who looked at Black beauty at the market were very poor?
- 31 - **Do you think** that Jerry was kind to his horses? Why / Why not ?
- 32 - **Why** were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers ?
33. **Why** did Beauty feel sorry for both the taxi drivers and their horses?
34. **Do you think** that Skinner and Filcher were kind to Beauty? Why / Why not?



## السؤال السابع كتابة اليميل او الباراجراف ( Write a letter or an e-mail)

### Write an e-mail about one of the following:

- a visit to the Red Sea
- an animal that you like
- social networking sites
- how your school has changed over the past few years
- You were planning to meet your friends an hour ago, but they haven't arrived. What do you think might, must or should have happened?
- a situation when someone tried to persuade you to do something but you refused

### Write a paragraph about one of the following:

- animals that lived in the past
- a story with a moral
- someone you have interviewed
- one of the ancient or modern wonders of the world
- some useful advice a teacher or friend has given you
- the importance of vocational schools





**Unit 10 "Travelling for work"****1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 marks)**

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

**1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks) " Port Said 2018 "**

A tourist wants to buy a train ticket to Luxor

Tourist : Good morning. I'd like to buy a ticket to Luxor, please.

Assistant : Would you like to buy a single or return?

Tourist : A single, please. (1) .....

Assistant : It's 60 Egyptian pounds.

Tourist : How long does the train take?

Assistant : (2) .....

Tourist : (3) .....

Assistant : Platform 2. Have a good trip.

Tourist : (4) .....

**1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks) " Kafr El-Sheikh 2018 "**

A passenger is at Cairo Railway Station to book a ticket to Alexandria

Passenger : Hello, sir. I'd like to book a ticket to Alex, please.

Assistant : Hello. (1) .....

Passenger : A single, please.

Passenger : (2) .....

Assistant : It is fifty pounds.

Passenger : When does the train leave?

Assistant : (3) .....

Passenger : How long does it take to reach to Alexandria?

Assistant : (4) .....

Passenger : Thank you.

Assistant : You're welcome.

**1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks) " Qena 2019 "**

Ahmed is buying a train ticket

Ahmed : (1) .....

Assistant : Yes, of course. Would you like a single or a return?

Ahmed : (2) ..... How much is it?

Assistant : (3) .....

Ahmed : (4) .....

Assistant : It takes about 7 hours.

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: (3 marks)**

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. You want to buy a train ticket. Ask the assistant for help. " Beheira 2018 "

2. You want to buy a train ticket to Aswan. " Fayoum 2018 "

3. You want to know how long the journey to Alexandria takes.

4. An assistant asks you whether you want a single or return ticket.
5. You want to ask about the time of the train arrival from Luxor.
6. You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Thursday. " WB "
7. You want to know the cost of a second class single ticket to Tanta.
8. you want to know which platform the train leaves from.
- 9-You want to book a return ticket to Aswan. " Our sons abroad 2019 "

### 3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

#### 3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Beni Seif 2019 "

Last summer holiday, Ahmed decided to make a journey by train from Cairo to Alexandria. He reached the station about half an hour before the departure of the train. The station was very crowded. He stood on the line and bought a second class ticket. The train came at the right time and everybody tried to get in the train fast. When the train left the station, Ahmed looked outside to enjoy the beauty of nature. The train was running through green fields. There were wheat plants here and there. It was a wonderful scene. Inside the train, passengers were talking together. Others were reading newspapers and magazines. One passenger stood and began to read out a poem he had written. Passengers clapped their hands after he had finished. Ahmed can't forget that journey as it gave him much pleasure.

#### A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- What did Ahmed decide to do last summer? .....
- 2- When did Ahmed arrive at the station? .....
- 3- Why did Ahmed look outside the train? .....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 4- When the train came in the station, passengers.....
  - a) read newspaper      b) clap their hands      c) tried to get in fast      d) talked together
- 5- he underlined word "others" refers to .....
  - a) passengers      b) newspaper      c) magazines      d) fields

### 5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : ( 3 marks )

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1. We took ..... to cross from one side of the Nile to the other. " Suez 2018 "
  - a) train      b) bicycle      c) ferry      d) car
2. He booked a/an .....ticket to Aswan as he decided to return to Cairo by car. " New Valley 2018 "
  - a) one      b) two      c) single      d) return
3. We didn't have much money, so we bought .....class ticket. " Fayoum 2018 "
  - a) a first      b) an express      c) a sleeper      d) an economy
4. We love to watch the beautiful .....from the train's window. " Giza 2018 "
  - a) journey      b) scene      c) sight      d) scenery

5. Excuse me, is Aswan the final ..... of this train? " Damietta 2018 "
- a) platform                      b) carriage                      c) destination                      d) express
6. What's the ..... of the number 10 bus? " Kafr El-Sheikh 2018 "
- a) arrival                      b) meeting                      c) destination                      d) stop
7. The hotel room was cool because it has air..... " Qena 2018 "
- a) communication                      b) cleaning                      c) conditioning                      d) mail
8. The tourist ..... a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the hotel. " Assuit 2018 "
- a) got on                      b) got off                      c) got into                      d) got out off
9. Traveling by train is a great way to see the ..... of a country. " Menofia 2018 "
- a) journey                      b) tickets                      c) station                      d) scenery
10. You can buy a lot of things on the internet if you are ..... " Matrouh 2019 "
- a) online                      b) internet                      c) offline                      d) airline
11. " ..... " is the place you are travelling to. " Menofia 2019 "
- a) Trip                      b) Scenery                      c) Journey                      d) Destination
12. Can we a ..... seat on the second class train? " WB "
- a) take                      b) book                      c) buy                      d) draw
13. The train stops at Luxor ..... its way to Aswan. " WB "
- a) with                      b) on                      c) in                      d) over
14. Yesterday, we ..... the bus at school to go our house. " WB "
- a) got into                      b) got off                      c) got on                      d) got out of
15. Imad's father ..... a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the station. " WB "
- a) got into                      b) got off                      c) got on                      d) got out of
16. Welcome to Cairo. Please ..... the plane through the doors at the front. " WB "
- a) get into                      b) get off                      c) get on                      d) get out of
17. I enjoy ..... trains because I wake up in a different place. " WB "
- a) economy                      b) sleeper                      c) return                      d) stopping
18. My father has a very important ..... at work today. " WB "
- a) travel                      b) meeting                      c) match                      d) minute
19. The train leaves from ..... 6. " WB "
- a. carriage                      b) station                      c) pavement                      d) platform
20. Mayar's cousin is going to live in Cairo so she has bought a/an ..... ticket. " WB "
- a) single                      b) only                      c) express                      d) return
21. How much did you ..... when you went to the museum yesterday? " WB "
- a) book                      b) buy                      c) spend                      d) give
22. The assistant told us that our ..... was at the front of the train. " WB "
- a) cart                      b) carriage                      c) bus                      d) plane
23. You have bought many things! how much money did you .....? " WB "
- a) book                      b) take                      c) spend                      d) give
24. Four tourists ..... a car and took some photos of the statues in the park. " WB "
- a) get into                      b) get off                      c) get on                      d) get out of
25. Do you want to catch the stopping train or the ..... train? " WB "
- a) platform                      b) carriage                      c) express                      d) going



26. We usually ..... the train ten minutes before it leaves. " WB "

- a) get into                      b) get off                      c) get on                      d) get out of

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: ( 3 marks )

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

1. Hend planned to spend the weekend in Alexandria. (going) " Gharbia 2018 "
2. I've already arranged to visit the museum tomorrow. ( visiting ) " Port Said 2018 "
3. My father promised to buy a tablet for my sister. ( will ) " Ismailia 2018 "
4. We have arranged to take the sleeper train to Aswan. ( taking ) " Port Said 2019 "
5. The engineer intends to build a new plane. ( going ) " Matrouh 2019 "
6. What is the destination of the golden bus? ( going ) " Red Sea 2019 "
7. I'm going to build a new house. ( intend )
8. What do you intend to study next year? ( are )
9. I promise to buy you a camera if you get high marks ( will )
10. Ashraf arranged to build a new house. ( building )
11. the train from Cairo to Alex is at 7 a.m. ( leaves )
12. He has prepared her bag to travel to London. ( going )

## Unit 11 " Making the right choices "

1- Finish the following dialogue: ( 4 marks )

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Fayoum 2018 "

Ayman is at the doctor's

The doctor : What's wrong with you, Mr. Ayman ?

Ayman : I can't breathe well and I cough all the time.

The doctor : (1) ..... ?

Ayman : Yes, I'm a heavy smoker.

The doctor : Unfortunately, smoking has made you a lung disease .

Ayman : (2) ..... ?

The doctor : You should stop smoking right now .

Ayman : So if I stopped smoking, would I be better?

The doctor : (3) ..... ?

Ayman : What else do you advise me to do?

The doctor : (4) .....

Ayman : Ok. I will start from tomorrow. Sport will make me stronger.

**1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Alexandria 2019 "**

Salma and Malak passed the final exams

Salma : Have you seen the results of the exam?

Malak : (1) ..... What about you?

Salma : I passed, too and got high marks.

Malak : Congratulations! (2) .....

Salma : Of course and they were delighted.

Malak : (3) ..... ?

Salma : In fact, I've decided to join the university. How about you?

Malak : (4) .....

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: ( 3 marks )**

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. You smoked a cigarette and now you feel ill. You regret it. " Aswan 2018 "

2. Your brother did very badly in the exam. " Alex 2018 "

3. Your little brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill. " Suez 2018 "

4. Your classmate is trying to persuade you to go to the club, but you refuse. " Sharkia 2018 "

5. A friend was up late as he drank much coffee. Make past recommendation. " Gharbia 2018 "

6. You advice a friend of yours who is ill. " Qalubia 2018 "

7. Your friend is addicted to smoking. Advise him. " Port Said 2018 "

8. You ate too much and felt full. Express regret. " Qalubia 2019 "

9. You see your cousin walking in the rain wearing a T-shirt.

10. You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )**

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

**3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Assuit 2019 "**

Computers are very important and useful in our daily life. They are used everywhere: in banks, schools, hospitals, offices and at home. We can watch films and matches, listen to songs, read the news , send e-mails, draw pictures and chat with our friends by using computers. Although computers have made life easier and more comfortable, they have bad effects on our lives. When computers are used too much, they will develop a kind of addiction. A person who is addicted to the computer will spend most of his time alone and if he doesn't check his social networking sites, he feels unhappy. Computer addiction can also cause health problems such as bad eye-sight and becoming fat.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Where are computers used ?
- 2- What will happen when computers are used too much
- 3- How does a person feel if he can't check his social networking sites? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 4- Some people become ..... when they use computers for a long time.
- a) rich                      b) fat                      c) important                      d) useful
- 5- The underlined word "they" refers to .....
- a) people                      b) games                      c) friends                      d) computers

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : ( 3 marks )**

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1. If you drink too much coffee, you may become ..... to it. " Sharkia 2018 "
- a) invited                      b) dictated                      c) added                      d) addicted
2. It is said that some people become..... to computer games. " Cairo 2018 "
- a) upset                      b) addicted                      c) hand                      d) successful
3. My brother broke his phone and needs someone to..... it. " Suez 2019 "
- a) repair                      b) make                      c) explain                      d) report
4. Too much smoking can cause lung and heart..... " Dakahlia 2019 "
- a) beats                      b) degrees                      c) diseases                      d) accidents
5. I had an ..... to fix my leg, and now I can walk again. " Damietta 2019 "
- a) operation                      b) accident                      c) proses                      d) position
6. Shady works hard to does good researches online. I know .....sure he will succeed. " Menofia 2019 "
- a) about                      b) for                      c) in                      d) with
7. Mona was very ..... when she said those unkind things to her sister. " SB "
- a) road                      b) root                      c) rule                      d) rude
8. It can be boring when you ..... a lot of time on your own. " SB "
- a) earn                      b) win                      c) spend                      d) send
9. Volleyball is very ..... game, you need to be fit to play it. " WB "
- a) psychological                      b) mental                      c) physical                      d) nervous
10. This mobile phone is very..... . It can send emails and take photos. " WB "
- a) harmful                      b) useless                      c) careless                      d) useful
11. The little boy was very ..... after his brother broke his toy. " WB "
- a) happy                      b) glad                      c) excited                      d) angry
12. It is very bad to smoke a..... in a hospital. " WB "
- a) cigarette                      b) fire                      c) light                      d) match
13. You should never be..... to people. Always talk nicely. " WB "
- a) helpful                      b) kind                      c) rude                      d) nice
14. Osama is coughing all the time. I think he has a problem with his..... " WB "
- a) lungs                      b) legs                      c) arms                      d) hearts
15. Maysa works very hard so I'm sure she'll ..... the exams. " WB "
- a) provide                      b) pass                      c) succeed                      d) fail
16. The basketball team are very..... . They've won all their games this year.
- a) successful                      b) unsuccessful                      c) success                      d) succeed



17. I try to be very .....when I visit my grandparents. I clean their kitchen and sweep the floor.  
a) helpful                      b) careless                      c) careful                      d) helpless
18. This exam must be difficult..... the students  
a) for                      b) at                      c) off                      d) in
19. My friends helped me..... my problems  
a) at                      b) on                      c) with                      d) of
20. The..... which helps you breathe is the lung.  
a) member                      b) organ                      c) part                      d) group

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: (3 marks)

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

- 1- I'm sure that he travelled by bus. ( must ) " Aswan 2018 "
- 2- I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. ( shouldn't ) " Suez 2018 "
- 3- Hany's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. ( might ) " Luxor 2018 "
4. I bought an old car but I regret. ( shouldn't ) " Qalubia 2018 "
5. I must have left my notebook at home. ( sure ) " Gharbia 2018 "
6. It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in Paris. ( can't ) " Giza 2018 "
7. It is not possible that you saw Salma yesterday. ( can't ) " Alex 2018 "
8. I didn't read all the questions before answering the exam. ( should ) " Assiut 2018 "
9. The old man ate too much fat. ( shouldn't ) " Beheira 2019 "
10. Noha didn't do her homework. ( should have ) " Fayoum 2019 "
11. I'm not sure where Tarek is. perhaps he is in the park. ( might ) " Suez 2019 "
12. Sami was cold last night. He wore a coat. ( must ) " WB "

## Unit 12 "Transport workers"

1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 marks)

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks) " Ismailia 2018 "

Ahmed lost his bag

Policeman : Can I help you?

Ahmed : Yes, please. ( 1 ) .....

Policeman : ( 2 ) .....?

Ahmed : Thirty minutes ago.

Policeman : ( 3 ) .....?

Ahmed : At the bus stop.

Policeman : What was inside the bag?

Ahmed : ( 4 ) .....

Policeman : Ok, Sir. I'll need your name and address to contact you if it is found.

**1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Fayoum 2019 "**

Mr. Ahmed and Mr. Tamer are talking about an advertisement on the internet

Mr. Ahmed : Have you read the advertisement on the internet today?

Mr. Tamer : (1) ..... What is it about?

Mr. Ahmed : (2) .....

Mr. Tamer : A bank manager! It sounds a very interesting job.

Mr. Ahmed : (3) ..... ?

Mr. Tamer : Yes. I want to get it.

Mr. Ahmed : (4) ..... ?

Mr. Tamer : The skill of using the computer and speaking English.

Mr. Ahmed : Well, I hope you will achieve your goal.

Mr. Tamer : Thank you

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: ( 3 marks )**

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. A friend asks you about an interesting film you have both have just watched. " Cairo 2018 "

2. You visited England in winter. It was the coldest place that you have been to. A friend asks you what the weather was like. " WB "

3. You have just finished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was. " WB "

4. You tell your sister that you had the most exciting trip.

5. You admire kofta very much. Express this.

6. You express your strong opinion of the electrician's job.

7. You bought anew camera. You ask your friend's opinion about it

8. You saw the scariest film. Your friend asks about it.

9. Your brother asks you about your opinion of the desert in summer

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )**

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

**3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Qalubia 2019 "**

After finishing preparatory school at 15, some students choose to stay in general education but 60 percent of them go to technical schools. That's why the Egyptian government is giving due care to the technical education and more technical schools are being built nowadays. Students who join such schools learn skills that they can really use

in the world of work. Because of the quick changes in technology, the skills that people need today are very different to what was needed ten or twenty years ago. There are also different kinds of technical schools and each school teaches a different kind of technical skill. Students who do very well at technical schools can then continue to study at university. They can get very good jobs, such as becoming engineers. However, all jobs that need technical skills are important. Life would be impossible without electricians, nurses, mechanics and farmers.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why are the skills that people need today different to the ones needed in the past?
- 2- What can the students who do very well at technical schools do?
- 3- How do you think life would be with good electricians, nurses, mechanics and farmers?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4- The underlined word "they" refers to .....

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a) general education students | c) general education schools |
| b) technical school students  | d) technical schools         |

5- Students finish ..... at the age of fifteen.

- |                      |                    |                      |                        |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| a) secondary schools | b) primary schools | c) technical schools | d) preparatory schools |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : ( 3 marks )**

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1. My uncle is the.....of a factory. He gives instructions to the workers. " Aswan 2018 "

- |            |            |             |              |
|------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| a) captain | b) manager | c) mechanic | d) secretary |
|------------|------------|-------------|--------------|

2. You ask for a / an .....when a car or a machine breaks down. " Giza 2018 "

- |            |            |              |             |
|------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| a) cleaner | b) manager | c) inspector | d) mechanic |
|------------|------------|--------------|-------------|

3. The lights in our house needed to be repaired, so we called the ..... " Ismailia 2018 "

- |             |                |                |            |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|------------|
| a) mechanic | b) electrician | c) firefighter | d) manager |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|------------|

4. A mechanic does a lot of .....work. " Beheira 2018 "

- |          |            |           |         |
|----------|------------|-----------|---------|
| a) handy | b) special | c) manual | d) hand |
|----------|------------|-----------|---------|

5. Some students work in the holidays to .....some money. " New Valley 2018 "

- |          |         |         |         |
|----------|---------|---------|---------|
| a) spend | b) lose | c) give | d) earn |
|----------|---------|---------|---------|

6. Engineers wear .....to protect their heads in worksites. "Our sons abroad 2019 "

- |           |            |            |          |
|-----------|------------|------------|----------|
| a) gloves | b) helmets | c) jackets | d) shoes |
|-----------|------------|------------|----------|

7. Egypt can be .....hot in August. " Aswan 2019 "

- |            |               |               |                |
|------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| a) special | b) specialist | c) especially | d) specialised |
|------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|

8. Thirty .....of people in Amsterdam travel to work by bike. "Sharkia 2019 "

- |           |            |            |         |
|-----------|------------|------------|---------|
| a) number | b) percent | c) present | d) more |
|-----------|------------|------------|---------|

9. ....work in dangerous places. " Our sons abroad 2019 "

- |           |                 |             |            |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|------------|
| a) Nurses | b) Firefighters | c) Teachers | d) Writers |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|------------|

10. Our school is not a very old .....It was built in 2005. "SB"

- |            |             |         |             |
|------------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| a) builder | b) location | c) view | d) building |
|------------|-------------|---------|-------------|

11. A .....checks that you have paid when you go on a bus or train. "SB"

- |                     |           |            |          |
|---------------------|-----------|------------|----------|
| a) ticket inspector | b) waiter | c) manager | d) baker |
|---------------------|-----------|------------|----------|

12. A .....washes floors and tidies rooms. "SB"

- |           |            |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| a) waiter | b) cleaner | c) manager | d) teacher |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|



13. Students in.....education do not go to technical schools "SB"  
a) real                      b) general                      c) different                      d) technical
14. Leila's mother.....her to learn how to cook well. "WB"  
a) encouraged                      b) warned                      c) forgot                      d) worked
15. Hatem's father .....him not to swim in the dangerous. "WB"  
a) completed                      b) felt                      c) invited                      d) warned
16. ....workers often have to wear boots and a helmet. "WB"  
a) Office                      b) Special                      c) Manual                      d) Hand
17. My brother went to a good university and had a great....."WB"  
a) entertainment                      b) population                      c) education                      d) invitation
18. The manager asked me to tell him about my work.....  
a) exercise                      b) experiment                      c) experience                      d) exam
19. After preparatory schools, some students prefer to go to.....schools  
a) technique                      b) technician                      c) technical                      d) techno
20. Students should learn many.....to use in the world of work  
a) skills                      b) skulls                      c) silks                      d) skates
21. My brother is going to be a doctor after he.....  
a) manages                      b) graduates                      c) interviews                      d) encourages
22. ....is very important because it gives us most of the food we eat.  
a) Industry                      b) Station                      c) Nursing                      d) Farming
23. Some students work in the holidays to .....some money.  
a) spend                      b) lose                      c) give                      d) earn
24. We are proud .....being Egyptians.  
a) to                      b) about                      c) of                      d) with

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: (3 marks)

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

1. " Keep working." said the teacher to the class. ( encouraged ) " Fayoum 2018 "  
.....
2. " Stand up, please." The teacher said to Ali. ( ordered ) " Luxor 2018 "  
.....
3. " You must stop smoking!" The doctor said to Hatem. ( advised ) " New Valley 2018 "  
.....
4. "Don't play in the street." Our father said to us.(warned) " Qalubia 2018 "  
.....
5. "Stand up." The teacher said to me. (ordered) " Gharbia 2018 "  
.....
6. "Please don't be late. " The teacher said to me. (advised) " Assiut 2018 "  
.....
7. The doctor said to Hazem "You must stop smoking" ( advised ) " Qena 2018 "  
.....
9. "Don't touch the snake." Mona said to Ola. ( warned ) " Port Said 2018 "  
.....
10. "English is my favourite subject." Ali said to me ( told ) " Damietta 2019 "  
.....

11. The coach said to the player "Do your best during the match." ( encouraged ) " Gharbia 2019 "
12. "Don't sit on that wall!" The tour guide said to Maha. ( warned ) " SB "
13. "I am learning how to swim." said Tarek. ( Tarek said ) " SB "
14. "The new shop will open in two weeks' time." Sara said to us. ( told ) " SB "
15. My sister wants to buy a book." said Ahmed. ( Ahmed said ) " WB "
16. "Would you like to read the book?" Randa said to Reem ( invited ) " WB "
17. "Go on! You can swim across the pool!" Mazin's father said to him ( encouraged ) " WB "
18. "The museum is next to the park." Mr. El-Baz said to Omar ( told ) " WB "
19. "You should stop eating so many chocolates." the doctor said to Hala ( advised )

### Unit 13 "At the observatory"

#### 1- Finish the following dialogue: ( 4 marks )

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

##### 1- Finish the following dialogue:- " Sharkia 2018 "

A teacher is talking to a student who is late for school.

Student : Excuse me, may I come in?

Teacher : Yes, stand here. (1) .....

Student : I always come late because of the bus.

Teacher : (2) .....

Student : I always leave home at quarter to eight.

Teacher : (3).....

Student : Ok. From tomorrow, I'll leave home a bit earlier. Can I sit now, sir?

Teacher : (4) .....

##### 1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Aswan 2019 "

Zeinab is talking to an astronomer.

Zeinab : Can I ask you some questions?

Astronomer : (1) .....

Zeinab : (2) .....

Astronomer : Here are 8 planets in our solar system.

Zeinab : (3) .....

Astronomer : No, not all the planets have moons.

Zeinab : Thank you very much.

Astronomer : (4) .....

#### 2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: ( 3 marks )

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in winter than in summer. " Luxor 2018 "

2. Ask your teacher politely what a star is made of. " Assiut 2018 "
3. Ask your father politely about his plan for the summer holiday " Gharbia 2018 "
4. You need to borrow your friend's laptop. " Giza 2018 "
5. You ask your friend politely to give you his camera. " Beheira 2018 "
6. You want to ask your teacher politely if he likes his job. " Assuit 2019 "
7. You are in bad need to your classmate's calculator as you forgot to bring yours. " Beheira 2019 "

### 3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

#### 3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Red Sea 2019 "

Salah was eighteen years old and went to the city school. He was very good at football, so he was in his school team. He always played very well and bravely in practice games and in matches and he scored a lot of goals. Salah's grandfather and grandmother usually came to see him when there was match and they were always happy when other people said, "Your grandson plays very well". Then one day Salah said to his grandmother, "we're practising for our big match next Saturday. Our school is going to play against the Garden school team. They have the best players in our city, so perhaps they'll beat us. Can you come and see the match?" "Oh yes his grandmother answered. Your grandfather and I will be there and I'm sure that you'll win the match.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Do you think that Salah was a good scorer? Why?
- 2- When did Salah's grandmother feel happy?
- 3- What does the underlined word "they" refer to?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 4- Salah practised games .....  
a) badly                      b) bravely                      c) carelessly                      d) slowly
- 5- Salah's ..... usually came to see him when there was a match.  
a) father                      b) mother                      c) grandparents                      d) grandson

#### 5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ( 3 marks )

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1. The ..... came from space and landed in the sea. " Fayoum 2018 "  
a) monument                      b) meteorite                      c) minaret                      d) mountain
- 2- The sun is the only ..... in our solar system. " New Valley 2018 "  
a) moon                      b) star                      c) planet                      d) plane
3. A ..... is a small piece of rock that is travelling through space. " Menofia 2018 "  
a) solar system                      b) shooting star                      c) moon                      d) planet
4. .... is the study of the stars. " Alex 2018 "  
a) Astrology                      b) Biology                      c) Astronomy                      d) Archaeology



5. It is hot today. It must be 40 ..... " Kafr El-Sheikh 2018 "
- a) degrees                      b) dots                      c) metres                      d) marks
6. The earth is one of the eight planets in our.....system. " Minia 2019 "
- a) cellar                      b) solar                      c) moral                      d) sugar
7. My friend is interested in space and he wants to be a / an ..... " Giza 2019 "
- a) pilot                      b) doctor                      c) astronomer                      d) scientist
8. The teacher wanted us to .....how the earth goes around the sun. " Damietta 2019 "
- a) explain                      b) advise                      c) regret                      d) control
9. Could you explain to me why I can't feel the earth..... ? " SB "
- a) burn                      b) turn                      c) travel                      d) get
- 10.The Science Museum has a ..... of rock from the moon. " WB "
- a) glass                      b) cup                      c) piece                      d) bag
- 11.If you want to look at stars and planets in our solar system you can go to the ..... " WB "
- a) observatory                      b) laboratory                      c) theatre                      d) university
- 12.There are eight ..... moving round the sun. " WB "
- a) plans                      b) plants                      c) planets                      d) planes
- 13.Moons usually go around..... " WB "
- a) planets                      b) stars                      c) the sun                      d) the solar system
- 14.Some stars are made of..... " WB "
- a) oil                      b) gas                      c) plastic                      d) metal
15. I..... if you could tell me how many solar systems there are. " WB "
- a) want                      b) tell                      c) explain                      d) wonder
16. It's hot in summer because the earth is..... to the sun. " WB "
- a) busiest                      b) biggest                      c) closet                      d) best
17. At night in the desert, you can sometimes see.....stars, but they disappear very quickly!
- a) shooting                      b) shopping                      c) shouting                      d) showing

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: ( 3 marks )

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

- 1- " What is the fastest way to the Capital Bank?" ( I asked ) " Suez 2018 "
2. "Where did you buy that shirt?" he said to me. (asked) " Minia 2018 "
3. "Will you finish your homework before dinner?" (Kareem asked his sister) " Menofia 2018 "
4. "Why can't I feel the earth turn?" Aya said to the teacher. ( asked ) " Ismailia 2018 "
5. "When will you return from Paris?" (My wife asked) " Sharkia 2018 "
6. "Where is the bank?" I said to Amin. (asked) " Sohag 2018 "
7. "What's the name of the biggest city of Egypt?" ( like to know ) " Kafr El-Sheik 2018 "
8. "Why do you come late, Hossam?" the teacher said. ( asked ) " Beheira 2018 "

9. I asked Nehal about her address. ( said to ) " Giza 2019 "

10. "How long does it take you to get to school?" (Warda asked me)

11. "Do you like reading, Taha?" said the teacher. ( asked )

12. "Do all the planets have moons?" Aya said to me (asked)

13. "Where are you going on holiday in the summer?" (I asked Youssef)

14. "Can you play the guitar?" Nabila said to Hana. ( asked )

15. "What is your geography project about?" my mother said to me. (asked)

## Unit 14 "Wonders of the world"

### 1- Finish the following dialogue: ( 4 marks )

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1- Finish the following dialogue: " Assiut 2018 "

Amir and Hany are talking about where to spend their holiday

Amir : We want to spend our holiday in a nice place outside Cairo.

Hany : (1) ..... ?

Amir : I suggest going to Fayoum. We haven't been there before.

Hany : (2) ..... ?

Amir : We can visit Mosque of Qaitbey and enjoy the beautiful scenery of Wadi Al-Rayyan waterfalls.

Hany : Can we swim there?

Amir : (3) ..... . We can take a trip to

Ain al Siliyin. the water is good for you.

Hany : How will we go there?

Amir : (4) ..... .

1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Sharkia 2019 "

Sami and Hani are talking about spending the mid-year holiday.

Sami : Hi! Where will you spend the midyear holiday?

Hani : (1) ..... .

Sami : Well, the weather is fine in Aswan. Who will you go with?

Hani : (2)..... .

Sami : (3)..... ?

Hani : We will stay at my uncle's house.

Sami : (4)..... ?

Hani : We will stay about seven days.

Sami : Have a nice trip.

### 2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: ( 3 marks )

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. You ask your brother about his opinion of your new mobile. " Qalubia 2018 "

2. Your sister says that the food you both had was tasty. You agree. " Menofia 2018 "
3. Your friend says that English is difficult. You disagree. " Damietta 2018 "
4. You want to know a tourist's opinion about the pyramids. " Sharkia 2018 "
5. Your friend says that the waterfalls are amazing. you completely agree. " Port Said 2018 "
6. Someone thinks that Wadi Rayyan waterfalls are man-made wonders. " Fayoum 2018 "
7. You want to know what your friend thinks of the English lesson. " Qena 2018 "
8. There is a new café in your area. You want to know what your friend thinks about it. " Sohag 2018 "
9. Your friend says that the test you both did was very easy. You express your opinion.
10. You tell your brother / sister that the hotel you all stayed in was very nice. You want to know if they he / she the same. " WB "
11. You see a photo of a modern museum. Your friend says that he / she doesn't like it, but you have another opinion. " WB "
12. A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had. " WB "
13. Your mother asks if you have finished cleaning the kitchen. The dishes are not clean yet. " WB "

### 3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )

السؤال الثالث، ورقة الامتحان

3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Garbia 2018 "

Four-year old Sara sat with her mother reading a book about tigers and how they are in danger. The book used difficult words that her mother had to explain what they meant. Sara learnt that tigers are getting fewer, and their places are getting smaller because new cities are built in their areas. Countries have started programs to help protect the tigers from becoming extinct which mean that the tigers will finally die out if something isn't done to save them. National Save The Tiger Month was begun to tell people about the problems the tigers are having. Finally, Sara suggested that her family keep a tiger at home. Her mother smiled. They would have another way to help tigers.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the book they read about?
- 2- How old is Sara?
- 3- Why do you think Sara's mother smiled



**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**4- The underlined word "extinct" means .....

- a) disappear                      b) increase                      c) exist                      d) survive

5- Countries start a program to ..... the tigers.

- a) connect                      b) protect                      c) hunt                      d) detect

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (3 marks)**

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1- The Taj Mahal is a ..... in India. " Aswan 2018 "

- a) monument                      b) minute                      c) moment                      d) river

2- Is the great pyramid natural or ..... " Suez 2018 "

- a) modern                      b) new                      c) man-made                      d) personal

3- There's a big ..... where the river goes over a cliff. " Luxor 2018 "

- a) fall                      b) waterfall                      c) water drop                      d) water cycle

4. The Suez canal is not natural. It's ..... " Minia 2018 "

- a) making                      b) build                      c) man-made                      d) building

5. A lot of ancient mosques have ..... in the middle. " Qalubia 2018 "

- a) temples                      b) carriages                      c) hippos                      d) fountains

6. The top of a building that is the shape of half a circle is called ..... " Ismailia 2018 "

- a) minaret                      b) dome                      c) monument                      d) temple

7. The Taj Mahal has four tall..... Alex 2018 "

- a) minarets                      b) houses                      c) fountains                      d) monuments

8.The mosque has a dome and two..... " Beheira 2018 "

- a) minarets                      b) temples                      c) palaces                      d) monuments

9.The sphinx is a famous..... many tourists visit it. " Port Said 2018"

- a) fountain                      b) canal                      c) monument                      d) park

10. .... design buildings for us to work and live in. " Menofia 2019"

- a) Inspectors                      b) Architects                      c) Technicians                      d) Archaeologists

11.We visited Cairo and saw some famous paintings in the art..... " Minia 2019"

- a) gallery                      b) pyramid                      c) fountain                      d) castle

12.You can usually find trees and birds at an..... in the desert. " WB "

- a) art gallery                      b) adventure                      c) oasis                      d) object

13.....is a very hard white, black or pink rock used for building. " WB "

- a) wood                      b) metal                      c) paper                      d) marble

14.The Taj Mahal in India was built by the ..... of India to remember his wife.

- a) officer                      b) musician                      c) engineer                      d) ruler

15.I saw a monument of a mosque that has two tall, beautiful.....

- a) minarets                      b) fountains                      c) gardens                      d) temples

16.The teacher asked Hassan to ..... his homework because he did not do it very well.

- a) replay                      b) redo                      c) reread                      d) repaint

17.Look! It says "tday's news" in the newspaper. This is a..... .

- a) misprint                      b) misread                      c) mislead                      d) mistreat

18. ....is something that is built to remind people of an important event or person.

- a) fountain                      b) canal                      c) monument                      d) park

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: (3 marks) السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

- 1-They have painted the building . ( been ) " Fayoum 2018 "
- 2-I liked this story a lot, so I decided to read it again. ( reread ) " Fayoum 2018 "
- 3- They have planted trees along the river. ( been ) " New Valley 2018 "
4. My mother hasn't cleaned my room yet. (been) " Minia 2018 "
5. Adam has won the first prize. (The first prize) " Qalubia 2018 "
6. They have collected a lot of money for the charity (been) " Ismailia 2018 "
7. Leila has made a cake for the family party. (A cake) " Alex 2018 "
8. They have planted trees along the river. (been) " Assuit 2018 "
9. Someone has drawn a picture in my diary (A picture) " SB "
10. Archaeologists have found an ancient building in the desert. ( been ) " SB "
- 11.They didn't like the colour of the house, so they decided to paint it again with a different colour. (repaint) " WB "

## Unit 15 "Technology"

1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 marks)

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1- Finish the following dialogue:- " Beheira 2018 "

Nada is telling Sara about her friend who lives in New York.

Nada : I have a friend who lives in New York.

Sara : Really! (1) .....

Nada : I communicate with her using social media.

Sara : Do you use your laptop?

Nada : No. (2).....

Sara : It sounds good. (3).....?

Nada : I can send messages and take photos.

Sara : Good. I think I will (4) .....

1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Beni Sweif 2019 "

Radwa is telling Nada about her new smart phone

Radwa : Hello Nada! Did you see my new smart phone?

Nada : Oh! It looks wonderful. (1) .....

Radwa : My father bought it for me on my birthday.

Nada : Congratulations (2) .....

Radwa : It was last Sunday.

Nada : How old are you now?

Radwa : (3)..... and how old are you?

Nada : (4).....

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: (3 marks)** السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. Noha tells you about an exciting film. you want to know more. " Ismailia 2018 "
2. A friend starts to read you an interesting news story, but then suddenly stops. " Suez 2018 "
3. Your friend is reading about some common internet scams. ask for more information. " Assiut 2018 "
4. A friend tells you that his / her brother is studying computer programming. Ask for more information. " WB "
5. Your cousin said that she had a busy day yesterday. Ask why. " WB "
6. Your friend reads only the first sentence of a long text message, then stops reading. " WB "
7. A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning. First, he / she went to the park. You want to know more. " WB "
8. Hisham speaks about the new project interestingly. encourage him to continue
9. This report says that 64% of Egyptians have smartphones.
10. Your brother tells you about an accident he had seen. ask him for more information

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions: (5 marks)** السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

**3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: (5 M)** " Aswan 2018 "

The computer has become one of the wonders of the world. It is clear that it affects our lives. The computer systems are developing all the time. In the future, you will probably drive your smart car from Cairo to Aswan. You don't have to worry during this long journey. If something goes wrong with your car engine, the computer in your car will help you. It will find out what is wrong and what should be done. It will connect to the internet to find the nearest garage that can fix your car problems. This can be done by sending an email. It will be easy to know the problem. Your computer will also help you know the way if you get lost by using satellites. Really it is a great wonder!

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What do you think of the computer?
- 2- How will the computer help drivers in the future?
- 3 – What does the underlined pronoun " it " refer to?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 4- The computer in your smart car will help you to .....
- a- sell your car    b- build a garage    c- know what is wrong with your car    d- lose the way

5- You will never feel ..... while driving a smart car.

a- happy

b- safe

c- worried

d- relaxed

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ( 3 marks )**

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1. This e-mail asks for my computer password. It must be a ..... " Alex 2018 "

a. score

b. skin

c. scam

d. scan

2. I have ..... my money to Alexandria Bank. " Assiut 2018 "

a. arranged

b. transferred

c. advertised

d. travelled

3. The use of computers in the world of business is an important ..... " Gharbia 2018 "

a. development

b. accident

c. government

d. monument

4. The clothes shop is.....for a new assistant. I think you can apply to get the job. " Port Said 2019 "

a. writing

b. investing

c. arranging

d. advertising

5. Egypt was the first Arab country ..... the internet. " Sharkia 2019 "

a. use

b. used

c. to use

d. uses

6. In some countries, you can ..... money to or from a bank. " Alex. 2019 "

a. translate

b. advertise

c. develop

d. transfer

7. My brother broke his phone and needed someone to ..... it. " Suez 2019 "

a. repair

b. make

c. explain

d. report

8. Many jobs now .....you to know how to use social media. " Beni Sweif 2019 "

a. refer

b. transfer

c. require

d. request

9. Social media are websites used by people to..... " SB "

a. communicate

b. change

c. arrange

d. allow

10. Have you read about the latest ..... in computers? " WB "

a. advertisement

b. arrangement

c. development

d. payment

11. There is an..... in the newspaper for a new computer game. " WB "

a. advertisement

b. experiment

c. development

d. payment

12. It is a/an..... that all the manual workers wear boots. " WB "

a. advertisement

b. payment

c. development

d. requirement

13. The students have..... to see the teacher after the class. " WB "

a. arranged

b. paid

c. advertised

d. travelled

14. It is very expensive to ..... something on television. " WB "

a. arrange

b. change

c. advertise

d. communicate

15. The privacy ..... on social networking sites make sure that only people who you know can see information. " WB "

a. messages

b. settings

c. sizes

d. sites

16. A/An..... went into the house at night and stole a lot of gold. " WB "

a. reporter

b. sailor

c. robber

d. engineer

**6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: ( 3 marks )**

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

1- Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with our homework. ( might ) " Suez 2018 "

2. I advise you not to tell lies. ( If ) " Aswan 2019 "



3. I can't go on holiday because I don't have enough money. ( If ) " Suez 2019 "
4. I'm very short, so I can't play basketball. ( If )
5. Ali would be able to run quickly if he exercised every day. (could)
6. If you learnt Japanese, you would perhaps get a job in Tokyo. (might)
7. Ali can't play football because he is very ill. (If)
8. He can't go to the party as he doesn't have free time. (If)
9. If you didn't get help, you would be in trouble. ( Unless )
10. You shouldn't watch too much TV. ( were )
11. I'm tired now, so I won't enjoy walking. ( If )

## Unit 16 "Animal stories"

### 1- Finish the following dialogue: ( 4 marks )

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

#### 1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " New Valley 2018 "

Between Hany and Ali, they are talking about reading.

Hany : Hello! Ali, What are you doing?

Ali : Hello! Hany, I'm(1) .....

Hany : I know you enjoy reading English books. (2) .....?

Ali : I bought it yesterday.

Hany : Can I (3) .....?

Ali : Yes, of course.

Hany : Thank you very much.

Ali : (4) .....

#### 1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Cairo 2019 "

Hazim meets Khalid who has bought a new shirt

Hazim : What a nice shirt you are wearing!

Khalid : Thanks a lot.

Hazim : (1).....

Khalid : I bought it on my birthday.

Hazim : On your birthday! How much is it?

Khalid : (2).....

Hazim : That's too much, isn't it?

Khalid : (3) ..... , but it is from Egyptian cotton.

Hazim : I'd like to buy one. (4) .....?

Khalid : of course, I'll come with you.

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: ( 3 marks )**

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. You need to borrow your friend's laptop. " Sohag 2018 "
2. You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people. " Giza 2018 "
3. You see people leaving rubbish on a beach. " Minia 2018 "
4. A friend tells you that you have won a prize. " WB "
5. our see children leaving rubbish in the street. " Beni Sweif 2018 "
6. Your friend said a snake had escaped from the zoo and nobody knew where it was. Respond to this news. " Aswan 2018 "
7. You are with your friend on a bus when you find a watch on the floor. " WB "
8. You broke a window during a game, what would you say? " WB "
9. You are with your friend on a bus when you find a watch on the floor. " WB "
10. You borrowed your friend's phone and you broke it. " WB "
11. You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert, but that he has just been found.

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )**

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

**3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Damietta 2019 "**

We study a lot of subjects at school. Each subject teaches us certain things in our life. Foreign languages enable us to communicate with other people and to know how other people think and talk. We learn the Arabic language to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us. Mathematics helps us to think. History tells us about our own country and the people of the world around us. Geography tells us about plants, animals and people, where and how they live and what they do. Physical Education helps us grow strong and keep us fit. We learn biology so as to tell us about living things. Computers are also very important because they help us do difficult sums quickly and can store information. They can also work with words and numbers.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- How is Physical Education useful? .....
- 2- Why do we learn foreign languages? .....
- 3- What does the underlined word "they" refer to? .....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 4- In ....., we can learn about living things.  
a) Maths                      b) History                      c) English                      d) Biology
- 5- If you want to know about your own country, you should study .....  
a) physical education      b) history                      c) English                      d) maths

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ( 3 marks )**

1. A story with a moral has a ..... " Fayoum 2018 "
  - a. sad ending      b. happy ending      c. no ending      d. message
2. Don't be ..... You've already eaten a big ice cream. " Minia 2018 "
  - a. honest      b. greedy      c. hardworking      d. kind
3. She is ..... he left nothing on the table for anyone to eat. " Qalubia 2018 "
  - a. kind      b. greedy      c. nice      d. excellent
4. The red chickens ..... eggs every day. " Cairo 2018 "
  - a. lay      b. take      c. eat      d. lie
5. They are ..... because they received the news of their success. " Gharbia 2018 "
  - a. scared      b. corrupt      c. distant      d. content
6. When you feel content, you are ..... " Dakahlia 2018 "
  - a. sad      b. angry      c. scared      d. happy
7. It is a good idea to ask a ..... person for advice. " Assiut 2018 "
  - a. greedy      b. foolish      c. careless      d. wise
8. A farmer found that his goose had ..... a yellow egg. " Beni Sweif 2018 "
  - a. lie      b. laid      c. lain      d. lay
9. Shaimaa did not like the film. She thought it was ..... " Port Said 2018 "
  - a. happy      b. exciting      c. terrible      d. interesting
10. Young people should always listen to the ..... words from their grandparents. " Qalubia 2019 "
  - a. free      b. content      c. wise      d. sad
11. This story is ..... I don't want to read it again. " Luxor 2019 "
  - a. terrible      b. greedy      c. interesting      d. special
12. It was summer and Ant was ..... food for the winter. " SB "
  - a. eating      b. collecting      c. coming      d. sleeping
13. The farmer puts all the farm ..... in a large bin. " SB "
  - a. hungry      b. not hungry      c. thirsty      d. not thirsty
14. If you have enough water, you are ..... " WB "
  - a. hungry      b. not hungry      c. thirsty      d. not thirsty
15. It is a good idea to ask a wise person for ..... " WB "
  - a. food      b. wonders      c. money      d. advice
16. Marwan asked to ..... Mustafa's phone so he could call his mother. " WB "
  - a. lend      b. give      c. borrow      d. see
17. How many eggs do the farmer's chickens ..... each day? " WB "
  - a. lie      b. give      c. lay      d. put
18. Khadeeja was very upset after she lost her ..... necklace. " WB "
  - a. woolen      b. golden      c. plastic      d. wooden
19. I saw a beautiful white ..... near the lake. " WB "
  - a. gaze      b. goes      c. goose      d. geese
20. Robbers are very ..... people. They always want to steal more money. " WB "
  - a. nice      b. greedy      c. kind      d. excellent

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: ( 3 marks )

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

- 1- First, we booked the tickets. Then, we went to the concert. ( before ) " Aswan 2018 "
2. After we had visited the museum, we had lunch. (until) " Menofia 2018 "
3. After we had visited the museum, we decided to have lunch. (until) " Alex 2018 "
4. First, I finished my work, then I went to the club. ( until ) " Beni Sweif 2018 "
5. First, I studied my lessons, then I did my homework. (After) " Dakahlia 2018 "
6. We visited the museum, then we went home. ( After ) " Sohag 2018 "
7. He finished his meal, then he phoned his father. ( before )
8. He didn't go to bed until he had watched TV. ( After )
9. Before he ate the eggs, he had bought some bread. ( After )
10. I had eaten fish before I played tennis. (As soon as)

## Unit 17 " Animal life in the past "

1- Finish the following dialogue: ( 4 marks )

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Port Said 2019 "

Alaa and Sarah are talking outside the exam room.

Alaa : Good morning, Sarah.

Sarah : Good morning, Alaa. (1).....?

Alaa : I think it was easy. I did quite well. (2).....?

Sarah : I did well, too.

Alaa : What do you think of the first question?

Sarah : It was a bit difficult, but (3).....

Alaa : Great. (4) .....

Sarah : Thank you, Alaa.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: ( 3 marks )

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. Your cousin asks you when your school was built. " Giza 2018 "
2. A friend asks you when the first car was made. " WB "
3. Your teacher asks you for the age of the oldest part of Cairo. This was built around 1000 BCE. " WB "
4. Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer. " WB "



5. Your friend asks about the age of the Giza pyramids.

6. You're asked when dinosaurs first lived. You aren't sure of the answer.

7. Your teacher asks you when you started studying English.

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )**

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

**3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Qena 2019 "**

Mr. Ramadan and his family decided to visit his brother Mr. Fawzy in Cairo. He took his wife, Mrs. Nawal, his two daughters Mona and Maha and his young son Karim to the train station. They bought the tickets and waited for the train. When the train arrived at 10 pm, they got into it. Mona sat next to Maha and Karim sat next to his mother. Mr. Ramadan sat behind them. Few minutes later a beautiful lady arrived and sat next to Mr. Ramadan. She looked at him and smiled. He also smiled to her, but no word. Because it was late at night and the journey to Cairo was long, most of the passengers fell into sleep. Again, the lady smiled to Mr. Ramadan and pretended being asleep. When the train arrived at Giza station early in the morning, Mr. Ramadan found that the lady next to him wasn't there and his mobile phone wasn't there either.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why did most of the passengers fall into sleep?
- 2- How did Mr. Ramadan and his family travel to Cairo?
- 3- What do you think of the beautiful lady?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4- They arrived at Cairo station .....

- a) at night      b) in the morning      c) in the afternoon      d) next week

5- The underlined word "it" refers to .....

- a) the station      b) the ticket      c) the train      d) the phone

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ( 3 marks )**

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1. ....are ideas that we aren't sure about. " Qalubia 2018 "

- a. Monuments      b. Volcanoes      c. Developments      d. Theories

2. When volcanoes ....., they put a lot of dust and gas in the atmosphere. " Gharbia 2018 "

- a. interrupt      b. erupt      c. accept      d. adapt

3.A.....is a rock which comes from space. " Beheira 2018 "

- a. dust      b. star      c. meteorite      d. planet

4.The .....came from space and landed in the sea. " Fayoum 2018 "

- a. monument      b. minaret      c. meteorite      d. mountain

5.Dinosaurs are animals which have died..... " Alex 2019 "

- a. out      b. of      c. from      d. in

6. People have used .....to make cups for hundreds of years. " Giza 2019 "

- a. stone      b. clay      c. straw      d. sticks

7. The ..... was about 8,000 years ago. " WB "

- a. rock age                      b. rain age                      c. stone age                      d. snow age

8. Yassin stopped and rested in a ..... when he was climbing the mountain " WB "

- a. flat                      b. cave                      c. hotel                      d. school

9. What was the ..... of the accident outside the museum? " WB "

- a. cause                      b. reason                      c. course                      d. degree

10. The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden ..... on the beach WB

- a. hats                      b. nuts                      c. cuts                      d. huts

11. .... is important because it gives us food to eat. " WB "

- a. Farming                      b. Growing                      c. Drinking                      d. Reading

12. Tomorrow's lesson will ..... at half past ten. " WB "

- a. begin                      b. spend                      c. build                      d. take

13. The ..... of the book was boring, but the end was very exciting. " WB "

- a. last                      b. beginning                      c. closing                      d. building

14. When an animal dies out, you will not ..... it again " WB "

- a. live                      b. see                      c. breathe                      d. climb

15. .... is something which comes from volcanoes. " WB "

- a. Wind                      b. Cloud                      c. Dust                      d. Rain

16. We need to protect many of our animals if we do not want them ..... to. " WB "

- a. die of                      b. die on                      c. die up                      d. die out

17. Scientists do experiments to prove their .....

- a. theories                      b. poems                      c. stories                      d. problems

18. Dinosaurs are found as ..... on earth now.

- a. shells                      b. fossils                      c. eggs                      d. coins

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: (3 marks)

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

1. I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive laptop. ( If ) " New Valley 2018 "

2. She punished her son because he had not told the truth. ( If ) " Menofia 2018 "

3. I didn't recognize your cousin so I didn't say hello. ( If ) " Cairo 2018 "

4. They played indoor games as the weather was very bad. ( if ) " Beheira 2018 "

5. Hanan didn't phone, so I didn't go to the party. ( If ) " Damietta 2018 "

6. I forgot my library card. I couldn't borrow a book ( If ) " SB "

7. I was tired. I didn't watch the documentary about dinosaurs ( If ) " SB "

8. Because my father drove me to school, I arrived on time. ( If ) " SB "

9. I was ill, so I didn't go to work. ( If ) " WB "

10. If Mai hadn't got up late, she wouldn't have missed the train. ( Unless )

11. Hend was careful, so she didn't have an accident. ( Unless )

## Unit 18 "Sea life"

### 1- Finish the following dialogue: ( 4 marks )

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

#### 1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks) " Dakahlia 2018 "

Sameh and Salma are talking about the summer holiday

Sameh : What are you going to do next summer holiday, Salma.

Salma : I am going to join a public library.

Sameh : Good (1) .....

Salma : Yes, we have one in our town. (2) .....

Sameh : I haven't decided yet, but I may go to Alexandria.

Salma : What will you do there?

Sameh : (3) .....

Salma : I wish you the best of luck.

Sameh : (4) .....

#### 1- Finish the following dialogue :- ( 4 M ) " Menofia 2019 "

Nader is talking to his father about his blog

Father : What are you doing ,Nader?

Nader : I am trying to start a blog

Father : (1) .....

Nader : It's a bout diving?

Father : (2) .....

Nader : Yes, of course. I have taken a lot of photos with the phone camera for my blog.

Father : What is a good place for diving in Egypt?

Nader : (3) .....

Father : What can you see underwater when you are diving?

Nader : (4) .....

### 2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations: ( 3 marks )

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert, but that he has just been found. " WB "

2. Your parents say that they are taking you to the beach tomorrow. " WB "

3. You thought you did badly in an exam, but you did well. " WB "

4. Grandma tells you that your friend can come to the family party on Saturday. " WB "

5. The news said that a bad storm is coming, but now they say it has moved away.

6. You hear that your friend got better after the accident he had.

7. You won the first place in the swimming competition.

### 3- Read the following, then answer the questions: ( 5 marks )

السؤال الثالث فم، ورقة الامتحان

3- Read the following passage and answer the questions: ( 5 M ) " Cairo 2019 "

Dolphins are sea animals that belong to the whales. A sea animal is the one that lives in the water. Dolphins are found all over the world in the oceans, seas, rivers and lakes. Dolphins are meat eaters: they feed on fish. They often swim together in groups and they have good eyesight and good hearing but they don't have a sense of smell. Dolphins come in different sizes. Some are smaller than the usual person, but others can be 30 feet long or more than five times than the usual person. Dolphins are very intelligent and communicate with each other using clicks and whistles. All dolphins are good swimmers and funny swimmers, too. If you go near the seashores, you might see dolphins playing and swimming happily there. Some park owners get dolphins in their parks to amuse the visitors.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Where are dolphins found?
- 2- How do dolphins communicate with each other?
- 3- Do you think that dolphins are plant eaters? Why? Why not?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- The underlined word " there " refers to .....

- a) oceans                      b) rivers                      c) lakes                      d) seashore

5- The underlined word " belong to " nearly means .....

- a) disagree with              b) similar to              c) different from              d) dangerous

### 5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ( 3 marks )

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

1. Fishermen aren't allowed to sail today as the sea is..... " Qalubia 2019 "

- a. rough                      b. calm                      c. nice                      d. good

2. The .....showed us how to dive under water. " Fayoum 2019 "

- a. hero                      b. interviewer                      c. instructor                      d. inventor

3. Have you been .....as interesting as Alexandria? " WB "

- a. somewhere              b. everywhere              c. anywhere              d. nowhere

4. A.....is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea. " WB "

- a. stingray                      b. whale                      c. coral                      d. dolphin

5. ....are the fastest fish in the world. " WB "

- a. dolphins                      b. starfish                      c. sailfish                      d. whales

6. ....is a group of animals that live together in large groups. " WB "

- a. moral                      b. coal                      c. coral                      d. coffee

7. The .....said that he saw some beautiful coral under the sea. " WB "

- a. diver                      b. driver                      c. player                      d. runner

8. The best place to see fish is in the old.....of a boat near the island. " WB "

- a. bone                      b. work                      c. wreck                      d. stone



9. It was a.....to hear that nobody was hurt in the accident. " WB "

- a. belief                      b. relief                      c. shock                      d. sadness

10. There was a lot of.....when the tourists saw some dolphins following the boat.

- a. development              b. arrangement              c. excitement              d. advertisement

11. ....are very intelligent. They often jump out of the water in front of our boat.

- a. sharks                      b. stingrays                      c. coral                      d. dolphins

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: ( 3 marks )

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

1. Do you have as much water as you need? (enough) " Cairo 2018 "

2. I can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. ( look forward ) " Giza 2018 "

3. I don't have a holiday, so I don't go to the beach with my friends. ( If ) " SB "

4. You should study hard. ( If ) " SB "

5. If I see Sayed, perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (might) " WB "

6. If Heba doesn't study hard, she will get low marks. ( Unless )

7. It's too hot, so we can't go to the beach. ( If )

8. We didn't hear the news as we didn't listen to the radio. ( If )

9. Wear your jacket or will get high marks. ( If )

7- Write a paragraph of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN ( 110 ) words on : ( 8 marks )

السؤال السابع في ورقة الامتحان

A train Journey you had. "Fayoum 2018 "

Last week, we went to Aswan. We went there by train. It was a good journey. Travelling by train is a great way to see the scenery of a country. My father booked us tickets in the sleeper train at Cairo station. There were a lot of other people who were waiting too, so the train was going to be busy. We went in first class because it is more comfortable than (second) class. It had comfortable beds. It's exciting to sleep in a place and wake up in another place. We had our dinner in the restaurant carriage this evening. The journey took about 13 hours to arrive at our destination. We had a good time.

One of the ancient wonders of the world. "Assuit 2018 "

I visited the Great pyramid last week. I went on a school trip with my friends. It was an amazing day. The great pyramid is one of the most important wonders of the world. It's 137 metres high. It contains amazing rooms. The ancient Egyptians built pyramids as tombs for the pharaohs and their queens. The pyramids were built thousand years ago. It took twenty years to be built. It has many secrets in the way of building and designing it. It contains many monuments. These monuments were taken to the Egyptian museum. Now the Great pyramid of Giza stays on the new list of wonders as a special eighth wonder.

**Social networking sites. " Kafr El-Sheikh 2019 "**

Some people become addicted to using social networking. At first, they use them just to send messages to their friends and to find out what their friends are doing. However, some people need to check their social networking sites all the time. If they don't check them, they begin to worry or feel unhappy. The best way to help these people is to suggest that they only use social networking sites for about half an hour. Suggest that they phone their friends instead of sending them messages. Encourage them to play a sport or make something instead of looking at their mobile phones.

**The importance of technical schools. " Giza 2019 "**

Technical schools are very important. There are now more technical schools around Egypt. About 60 % of students in Egypt go to technical secondary where they learn a different kind of technical skill. For example, students can learn about work in hotels and shops or learn skills needed for industry, farming or nursing. Students study at these schools for three or five years. Students who do very well at technical schools can continue to study at university. They can get very good jobs, such as becoming engineers. However, all jobs that need skill are important. Life would be impossible without electricians, nurses, mechanics and farmers.

**A story with a moral. " Cairo 2019 "**

One day, a farmer found that his goose had laid a yellow egg. When he picked it up, it was heavy. He decided to take it home. He found out that it was a golden egg. Every morning, the same thing happened. The farmer soon became very rich. He sold all the golden eggs in the market. However, the farmer soon became greedy. He thought that there must be a lot of golden eggs inside the goose, so He decided to kill the goose to take all the golden eggs inside it. He didn't find anything. We learn that we shouldn't be greedy.

**The danger of smoking. "New Valley 2018 "**

Smoking is very bad for your health. The tobacco in cigarettes contains dangerous chemicals. It makes you ill. Smoking damages your lungs and you cannot breathe well. People who smoke can't run or breathe well. Also, they can't do many jobs. Smoking can make people's fingers and teeth yellow, too. People who start smoking find it very difficult to stop, because their bodies need the tobacco. Cigarettes are very expensive, too. Smoking pollutes the environment. We should all help keep the environment clean because we all live in it. So people should do some sports. We should help them give up smoking.

A job I would like to do. " Alex 2019 "

It is known that any person should have a certain goal in life. If the person has a goal, he should exert great efforts to achieve this goal. My goal for the future is to become a doctor. I would like to do this job to serve my country, help poor people in my village and earn a lot of money. I hope to search for the causes of diseases like cancer or brain disease to find the best treatment for them. The job of the doctor has some qualities. A successful doctor should be honest, helpful, brave, patient, faithful and many other good qualities. If I want to become a doctor, I should study hard to join the faculty of medicine.

An animal that you like. " Suez 2019 "

The hippo is the animal I like most. Hippos live in Africa. They like water and spend about 16 hours a day in rivers or lakes. They live in big groups of 30 or more. They are very large animals with big heads and small ears. They weigh more than 4,000 kilos and are usually about 1.6 metres tall. Hippos eat about 35 kilos of grass a day, and they also eat fruit. They walk for up to ten kilometer every night when they look for things to eat.

Smart phones.

In fact the mobile phone is one of the most important inventions .However, it has some advantages and some disadvantages .First of all, we can start with its advantages. It enables people to contact each other easily at any time in any place .It is small enough to carry. It is useful for some people who work in remote areas such as engineers and businessmen. It is important for us in case of danger or troubles. On the other hand, it has some disadvantages. Some doctors think that it causes some serious diseases. It also makes people lazy because it prevents them from visiting each other .To sum up, we can say it is advisable for people to use it only when necessary to avoid its serious side effects.

Solar system. " Qena 2019 "

The solar system is the sun and everything turns around it. That includes the planets and their moons. There used to be nine planets in the solar system. Now there are eight planets. They are mercury, Venus, earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune. They are all different sizes. The biggest planet is Jupiter .It is 1,000 times bigger than earth. Three of the planets are smaller than earth. Only two planets in the solar system don't have any moons, but one planet has 62 moons and one has 67! We live on earth. The earth's moon is round, but many of the other moons are different shapes and sizes.

Some useful advice a teacher or friend has given you. "Damietta 2018 "

My teachers are very helpful and friendly. I like them all .The teacher of English is very kind. He gave us some useful advice last week. He advised us not to waste our time. He also advised us to study hard to be successful. He advised us to read a lot to widen our minds. Finally, He told us to obey and respect our parents. I will follow his advice.

7- Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on : ( 8 marks )

السؤال السابع في ورقة الامتحان

- A situation when someone tried to persuade you to do something but you refused.

To : Ali

From : Adel

About : a situation happened to me.

Hi Ali,

How are you? I hope you are well. I'd like to tell about a situation happened to me. Last week, I and my friend, Ayman, went to the cinema. During the film, I saw him taking a packet of cigarettes out of his pocket. He offered me one and tried to persuade me to smoke. I refused angrily telling him that he must stop smoking at once. Smoking is very dangerous. It can lead to heart and lungs disease. At last, he promised to stop it.

Best wishes,

Adel

#### 4- The Reader ( Black Beauty ) :-

A) Match column A with column : ( 2 marks )

A		B	
1	Black Beauty	a	liked the latest fashion.
2	Ginger	b	was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride.
3	York	c	said, "if they don't tighten the reins more, I will do what they ask me".
4	Lady Smythe	d	was much smaller than Earl Smythe's house at Earls Hall Park.
		e	was Earl Smythe's helper.

A		B	
1	Black Beauty	a	was accused of stealing the horses' food.
2	Mr. Barry	b	suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks.
3	Mr. Barry's friend	c	said, "If they cannot pull a carriage , we must sell them."
4	Filcher	d	was a rich man who bought Black Beauty.
		e	was taken to a market for horses.

A		B	
1	Jerry Baker	a	always helped to look after Black Beauty and worked hard.
2	Captain	b	was the best owner and a kind taxi driver.
3	Jerry's son, Harry	c	was the horse that went out with the taxi carriage in the morning.
4	Black Beauty	d	examined Black Beauty carefully.
		e	was pleased with his new owner.



A		B	
1	Polly	a	believed that a pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired.
2	Ginger	b	was given food before walking for many kilometres.
3	Jerry	c	was Jerry's wife.
4	Black Beauty	d	wasn't able to run very fast after the fall.
		e	was Jerry's son.

A		B	
1	The doctor	a	had easier work in the end.
2	Skinner	b	took Black Beauty to a large field to give him good food.
3	Mr. Thoroughgood	c	had no problems all his life.
4	Black Beauty	d	was also a taxi driver.
		e	told Jerry that he should stop driving taxi.

A		B	
1	Jerry	a	stopped working because the vet said he broke his leg.
2	Black Beauty	b	decided to sell Black Beauty.
3	Joe Green	c	recognised Black Beauty from his white foot and white star.
4	Skinner	d	became healthy again after Mr. Thoroughgood and his grandson looked after him
		e	moved to a cottage with his family so that he could work for Mrs Fowler.

**B) Answer the following questions: ( 2 marks )**

1- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

☒ **Yes, because she was uncomfortable.** \* **No, she should worked hard like Black Beauty.**

2- Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt. Why / Why not? ☒ **No, because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were very uncomfortable.**

3-Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?

☒ **Because She does not always do what her owners want.**

4- Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

☒ **Because she was becoming weaker and weaker.**

5- Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why not?

☒ **No, because he didn't always do what people asked him to do.**

6- Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's first morning in London?

☒ **I think he didn't want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day.**

7- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

☒ **Because he didn't want to lose money.**

8- Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill- looking

✓ **Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.**

9- Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

✓ **Because waited outside the house of a rich man when it was very cold.**

10- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs. Fowler?

✓ **Because he wasn't sure that he would find a happy home again.**

11- Why do you think the reins were uncomfortable?

✓ **Because they kept the horses' heads held high all the time.**

12- Why do you think it was very difficult for the horses to pull a carriage up a hill?

✓ **Because they couldn't put their heads down when they were wearing the reins.**

13- How do you know that York cared about Ginger and Black Beauty?

✓ **He was angry that they wore the special reins. He helped them when they were hurt.**

14- Why do you think Earl Smythe decided to sell the horses?

✓ **Because they could not pull a carriage any more.**

15- Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why / Why not?

✓ **Yes, because he stole Black Beauty's food.**

16- Why do you think it's important to watch animal workers carefully?

✓ **To make sure they are honest.**

17- Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had ever had?

✓ **Because he gave him good food and fresh water, he was kind to him and he was a very good driver.**

18- Why do you think Black Beauty felt sorry for some of taxi drivers and their horses?

✓ **Because they had to work for very long hours to get enough money.**

19- How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

✓ **Because he took the woman to hospital when he saw that she needed help.**

20- Why do you think that holidays weren't always easy time for taxi drivers?

✓ **Because they had a lot of work taking people from house to house.**

21- Why do you think that Skinner makes Black Beauty work so hard?

✓ **Because he was very poor and he had to work hard to get enough money.**

22- Why do you think that Black Beauty didn't recognise Joe Green at first?

✓ **Because he was now a tall, strong man.**

23- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked weak to carry their bags?

✓ **I think he didn't want to lose money, so he worked seven days a week.**

24- What is the moral of the story?

✓ **To know that animals feel like us and to be kind with them.**

مع أطيب التحيات

Best Wishes

Excellence

PART

1

FINAL  
REVISION

Booklet

PREP

3

Revision (PART 1 2021)

Unit (10/11/&12)

*With best wishes*

# Vocabulary

word	meaning	word	meaning	word	meaning
travel for	يسافر	flight	رحلة جوية	restaurant	مطعم
work	العمل	voyage	رحلة بحرية	carriage	عربة قطار
station	محطة	comfortable	مريح	dinner	العشاء
sleeper train	قطار النوم	destination	مكان الوصول	assistant	عامل - مساعد
meeting	اجتماع	booking	حجز	put down	يضع
leaves	يغادر	tickets	تذاكر	wake up	يستيقظ
wait	ينتظر	online	عبر الانترنت	hotel	فندق
busy	مزدحم	single	ذهاب	best wishes	أطيب الأمنى
way	طريق	return	ذهاب وعودة	library	مكتبة
scenery	مناظر طبيعية	first class	درجة أولى	prepare for	يُعد - يجهز
journey	رحلة طويلة	economy	درجة اقتصادية	spend	يقضي
trip	رحلة قصيرة	takes	يستغرق	breeze	نسيم - هواء
businessman	رجل أعمال	goodbye	الى اللقاء	get off	ينزل من
express	سريع	pavement	رصيف قطار	get out of	يخرج من
faster	أسرع	sports centre	مركز رياضي	get into	يدخل الى
assistant	مساعد	get ready	يستعد	fantastic	رائع
air	تكيف	miss	يفوتة - يفقد	huge	ضخم
rail card	كارت اشتراك	good idea	فكرة جيدة	midday	منتصف النهار
cheaper	أرخص	communication	اتصال	light	خفيف
without	بدون	condensation	التكثف	wonderful	رائع
Egyptian	مصري	ferry	معدية	problem	مشكلة
pound	جنية	bridge	كوبري	transport	النقل
make choice	يختار	spend	يقضي	damage	يتلف - يدمر
right	صحيح	enough	كافى	do well	يؤدي جيدا
successful	ناجح	pass	يجتاز	do badly	يؤدي بسوء
hard	صعب	regret	يندم	sweets	حلوي
changed	متغير	operation	عملية جراحية	cause	يسبب
smoke	يدخن	healthy	صحي	heart	قلب
addicted to	مدمن على	persuade	يقنع	accident	حادثة
cough	يكح	illness	مرض - تعب	fix	يصلح - يثبت



cough	يكح	illness	مرض - تعب	fix	يصلح - يثبت
lung	رئة	breathe	يتنفس	belong to	يخص
disease	مرض	cut into	يقطع - يفتح	raincoat	معطف المطر
talk to	يتحدث الى	watch out	يراقب - احترس	check	يفحص
physical	جسدى	rude to	وقح مع	instead of	بدلا من
addiction	ادمان	angry	غاضب	make	يصنع ملصق
body	جسم	look ill	يبدو مريض	alone	بمفرده
cigarette	سيجارة	drugs	مخدرات	useful	مفيد
wake up	يستيقظ	say no	يقول لا - يرفض	wonderful	رائع
psychologica	نفسى	weak	ضعيف	success	النجاح
social	اجتماعى	using	استخدام	sweep	يكنس
sites	مواقع	messages	رسائل	agree	يوافق
unhappy	غير سعيد	find out	يكشف	object to	يعترض على
transport	النقل	manager	مدير	warn	يحذر
workers	عمال	look out	يحترس من	order	يامر
work on	يعمل في مشروع	helmet	خوذة	boots	حذاء برقبة
project	مشروع	experience	خبرة	manage	يدير
building	مبنى	group	مجموعة	airport	مطار
middle	وسط	around	حول	dangerous	خطير
station	محطة	manual	يدوي	guide	مرشد
part	جزء	proud	فخور	special	خاص او مميز
metro line	خط المترو	especially	خصوصا	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر
site	موقع	encourage	يشجع	under	تحت الارض
transport	النقل	manager	مدير	warn	يحذر
cleaner	عامل نظافة	expression	تعبيرات	fairly	الى حد ما
mechanic	ميكانيكى	opinion	رأي	industry	صناعة
ticket	تذكرة	railway	سكة حديد	patient	صبور
inspector	مفتش	station	محطة	incredibly	بشكل غير معقول
angry with	غاضب من	get onto	يركب	skills	مهارات
firefighter	رجل اطفاء	engineers	مهندسون	sounds	يبدو
waiter	جرسون	discourage	لا يشجع	industry	صناعة

# DEFINATIONS

<b>destination</b>	<b>the place you are travelling to</b>
<b>scenery</b>	mountains, rivers or other natural things that you can see
<b>carriage</b>	part of a train
<b>meeting</b>	an event when people meet to discuss something
<b>booking</b>	arranging for something you want late
<b>return tickets</b>	tickets for a journey to a place and back again
<b>economy</b>	for less money
<b>pass</b>	be successful in an exam
<b>disease</b>	an illness
<b>addicted</b>	unable to stop doing something
<b>lung</b>	an organ which helps you breathe
<b>operation</b>	when a doctor cuts into your body to help you get better
<b>manager</b>	tells you what to do each day
<b>proud</b>	are pleased because it is good
<b>especially</b>	much more than usual.
<b>Manual</b>	working with your hands.
<b>buildings</b>	Houses, hotels and factories
<b>cleaner</b>	washes floors and tidies rooms
<b>mechanic</b>	checks and mends cars
<b>ticket inspector</b>	checks that you have paid when you go on a bus or train.

## Function Box

<b>expressing past recommendations</b>	التوصيات في الماضي
I think you should have tried (the pizza) last night.	
You shouldn't have drunk (so much coffee) yesterday.	
<b>explaining a choice in the past</b>	توضيح سبب اختيار في الماضي
I really didn't want to (eat pizza). It's not healthy.	
I wasn't interested, thanks.	
<b>expressing regret in the past</b>	التعبير عن الندم في الماضي
I really shouldn't have (smoked that cigarette) because	
<b>Making opinions stronger</b>	اعطاء رأي قوي
These people can be <b>quite</b> angry if their train is late. /Most of them work <b>really</b> hard.	
A railway station manager's job is <b>very</b> important.	
Sometimes I have to help with <b>extremely</b> big problems	
<b>Buying/Booking a train ticket</b>	شراء وحجز التذاكر
Can I book a single / return (ticket to Alexandria), please?	
Would you like first or second class?	
How long does (the express train) take?	
How much is that, please?	
Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?	

# Language Notes

–ask + مصدر + to + مفعول

✍ He asked me to go with him.

– On a journey في رحلة

✍ I have been on this journey before.

– Journey رحلة طويلة \* trip رحلة قصيرة او رحلة عمل \* flight رحلة جوية \* voyage رحلة بحرية

✍ We went on a flight by plane.

✍ Our voyage by boat was interesting.

– arrive in / at يصل الى = get to = reach

✍ We arrived at our destination late.

✍ We reached our destination late.

– book = reserve يحجز

✍ It is easy to book / reserve a ticket.

– single ticket تذكرة ذهاب \* return ticket تذكرة ذهاب وعودة

✍ I will travel and return on the same day so I booked a return ticket.

– On its way to في طريقه الى

✍ The train stops at Luxor on its way to Aswan.

– in fifteen minutes' time في خلال 15 دقيقة

✍ There is an express train in fifteen minutes' time.

– along بطول / بامتداد \* a long طويل

✍ The stopping train stops at a lot of stations along the way.

– buy food on the train يشتري طعام من / في القطار

✍ You can buy food and drinks on the train.

– Platform رصيف قطار \* pavement/sidewalk رصيف الشارع

✍ The train leaves from platform 5.

– meeting لقاء \* interview مقابلة تلفزيونية / حوار

My father has a meeting with his staff.

– good at جيد في \* good for مفيد لـ \* good to عطوف على

✍ He was very good at English.

✍ Milk is good for babies.

– stopped + V + ing يتوقف عن فعل الشيء

✍ He decided to stop smoking.

– Know for sure يعرف بالتاكيد

✍ I don't know for sure what has happened.

– become addicted to + الشيء

✍ He might have become addicted to smoking.

– help + مفعول + الشيء

✍ His teacher helped him with his problems.

– has a disease لديه / يعاني من مرض

✍ He has lung disease from too much smoking.

– spend + وقت + V + ing يقضي وقته في

✍ He spent enough time studying.

– pass exam يجتاز = succeed in exam

✍ He passed his exam successfully.

- **regret + V + ing** يندم على شيء فعله
- ✗ I regret starting smoking.
- **do an operation** يجري عملية جراحية \* **have an operation** تُجري له عملية جراحية
- ✗ The doctor did the operation last week.
- ✗ My uncle had an operation last week.
- **it is hard for + مصدر + to + مفعول**
- ✗ It is hard for people to stop smoking.
- **watch out for** يلاحظ – يتابع
- ✗ Watch out for changes in people's habits.
- **persuade --- to + مصدر**
- ✗ He persuaded his friend to stop smoking.
- **make choices** يختار
- ✗ We should always make the right choices.
- **make posters** يصنع بوسترات أو ملصقات
- ✗ They made posters about the dangers of smoking.
- **work on a project** يعمل في مشروع
- ✗ He is working on a project in Cairo.
- **order** مصدر to + مفعول
- ✗ He ordered me to wear a helmet.
- **arrive in** مكان كبير \* **arrive at** مكان صغير = **get to / reach + مكان**
- ✗ He arrived in Cairo. = got to = reached
- ✗ He arrived at the sight. = got to = reached
- **look out for + شيء** يحترس من
- ✗ You should look out for falling things.
- **part of a team** جزء من فريق
- ✗ He enjoyed being part of a team.
- **keep everyone safe** يحافظ على امان
- ✗ The station manager's job is to keep everyone safe.
- **get onto the correct train** يركب القطار الصحيح / المطلوب
- ✗ He helped them to get onto the correct train.
- **encourage** مصدر to + مفعول
- ✗ He always encourages pupils to do better.
- **break** يفسد – يسه – يسه – يسه \* **break down** يتعطل \* **break into** يقتحم
- ✗ He broke the mobile by mistake.
- ✗ The train broke down so we took the bus.
- ✗ The thieves broke into the house.
- **sound interesting** يبدو ممتع أو شيق
- ✗ It sounds a very interesting job.
- **different to / from** مختلف عن
- ✗ Today skills are different to those in the past.
- **graduate in + سنة أو مادة التخصص**
- ✗ He graduated in 2000 in English



# Notice well

journey	trip	successful	unsuccessful	quite	quiet
flight	voyage	good	bad	work on	work for
leave	arrive	pass	fail	in the middle	at the end
busy – crowded	empty	habits	traditions	part	port
single	return	healthy	unhealthy	look for	look out for
single	married	talk about	talk to	tiring	tired
book	a book	wrong	right	patient	a patient
faster	slower	rude	route	quite	quiet
platform	pavement	remember	forget	work on	work for
along	a long			in the middle	at the end

## choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1 – The place you are travelling to is your-----

a. location b. sense c. destination d. application

2 – Mountains , rivers or other natural things that you can see -----

a. goal b. senses c. society d. scenery

3 – A ----- is a part of a train.

a. carriage b. plane c. luggage d. remote

4 – An event when people meet to discuss something-----

a. concert b. film c. match d. meeting

5 – To ----- means to arrange for something you want later.

a. hock b. mock c. rock d. book

6 – Tickets for a journey to a place and back again are -----tickets.

a. single b. return c. married d. double

7 – For less money means -----

a. economy b. first class c. business class d. VIP class

8 – The assistant told us that our----- was at the front of the train.

a. theatre b. train c. ladder d. carriage

9 – How much did you ----- when you went to the museum yesterday?

a. swim b. sleep c. get d. spend

10 – If we take the midday bus to Giza, we can ----- to Cairo at 6 o'clock.

a. reach b. arrive c. return d. turn

11 – Excuse me, is Alexandria the final ----- of the train.

a. examination b. preservation c. destination d. play station

12 – The people who work at the shop have a ----- every day before the shop opens.

a. fight b. meeting c. fire d. concert

13 – Most people travel in ----- class on planes.

a. economy b. first c. high d. VIP

14 – We took a ----- to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.

a. bicycle b. ferry c. ship d. plane

15 – We love to watch the beautiful ----- from the train's windows.

a. scenery b. station c. journey d. tickets

- 16 – Do you want to catch the stopping train or the ----- train?  
a. carriage b. platform c. express d. going
- 17 – It is hot today, but the hotel room is cool because it has air-----  
a. conditioning b. communication c. condensation d. cleaning
- 18 – Mayar's cousin is going to live in Cairo so she has enough a/an ----- ticket.  
a. single b. only c. express d. return
- 19 – Yesterday we got----- the bus and went to the park.  
a. on b. by c. at d. in
- 20 – You should ----- a room early in that hotel because it is usually crowded.  
a. stick b. look c. book d. break
- 21 – The train leaves from -----6.  
a. pavement b. carriage c. platform d. tower
- 22 – My father has a very important ----- at work today.  
a. breakfast b. meeting c. minute d. clothes
- 23 – I am going to take the ----train because it is much faster than the sleeping train.  
a. sleeping b. single c. return d. express
- 24 – I enjoy ----- trains because I wake up in a different place.  
a. lazy b. sleeper c. return d. ancient
- 25 – We went on a ----- by plane.  
a. ride b. flight c. voyage d. cycle
- 26 – The light wind is called -----  
a. sneeze b. freeze c. breeze d. release
- 27 – They are a lot of people waiting for the train, it is going to be-----  
a. sad b. free c. not crowded d. busy
- 28 - ----- by train is a great way to see the scenery.  
a. Sleeping b. Cooking c. Travelling d. Swimming
- 29 – You can book tickets ----- or buy them at the station.  
a. online b. offline c. inline d. byline
- 30 – Economy means ----- class.  
a. first b. second c. supper d. business
- 13 – To be successful in an exam is to -----  
a. bathe b. bath c. path d. pass
- 32 – An illness means -----  
a. freeze b. increase c. disease d. please
- 33 – Unable to stop doing something -----  
a. pretended b. intended c. addicted d. predicted
- 34 – An organ which helps you breathe is your-----  
a. stomach b. heart c. lung d. eye
- 35 – When a doctor cuts into your body to help you get better he does an-----  
a. subject b. project c. survey d. operation
- 36 – Too much smoking can cause lung and heart-----  
a. freeze b. quizzes c. disease d. degrees
- 37 – You should try to ----- the right choices.

- a. making   b. burn   c. make   d. done
- 38 – Don't drink too much coffee, or you will become-----to it.  
a. predicted   b. addicted   c. invented   d. invited
- 39 – I had an ----- to fix my leg, and now I can walk again.  
a. operation   b. form   c. accident   d. uniform
- 40 – Maysa works very hard so I am sure she will----- the exams.  
a. miss   b. fail   c. provide   d. pass
- 41 – Osama is coughing all the time. I think he has a problem with his -----  
a. fingers   b. arms   c. legs   d. lungs
- 42 – A cigarette is ----- for you.  
a. important   b. bad   c. good   d. useful
- 43 – Physical is related with your-----  
a. mind   b. brain   c. body   d. heart
- 44 – He is ----- to people. He speaks in a bad way.  
a. nice   b. good   c. rude   d. brave
- 45 – I try to be very -----when I visit my grandparents, I clean and sweep the floor.  
a. careless   b. helpless   c. helpful   d. lazy
- 46 – The basketball team are very ----- they have won all their games.  
a. laziness   b. unsuccessful   c. lazy   d. successful
- 47 – He might have addicted to -----  
a. smoke   b. smokes   c. smoking   d. smoked
- 48 – I don't know ----- sure what happened.  
a. for   b. by   c. in   d. at
- 49 – They will help him ----- his problems.  
a. to   b. by   c. with   d. in
- 50 – The doctor ----- the operation yesterday.  
a. have   b. had   c. did   d. do
- 51 – My uncle had an accident so he ----- a heart operation.  
a. bought   b. sold   c. had   d. did
- 52 – He didn't spend enough time-----  
a. to study   b. studied   c. study   d. studying
- 53 – He didn't ----- any of his exams.  
a. kill   b. succeeded   c. pass   d. did
- 54 – I regret ----- my time. I should have been careful.  
a. wasted   b. to waste   c. wasting   d. waste
- 55 – His ----- is to get up early and walk.  
a. habit   b. tradition   c. custom   d. traditional
- 56 – You should never be ----- to people. Always talk nicely.  
a. good   b. nice   c. polite   d. rude
- 57 – The little boy was very ----- after his brother broke his toy.  
a. angry   b. hungry   c. thirsty   d. happy
- 58 – Volleyball is a ----- game, you need to be fit to play it.  
a. psychological   b. physical   c. mind   d. mental
- 59 – It is very bad to smoke a ----- in a hospital.

a. pile      b. file      c. cigarette      d. e-mail

60 – They are very good footballers, so the reason for losing their games is -----

a. mind      b. mental      c. physical      d. psychological

61. Houses, hotels and factories are examples of -----

a. buildings      b. computers      c. animals      d. hobbies

62 – Your----- at work tells you what to do each day.

a. manage      b. manager      c. dentist      d. oculist

63 – If you are -----, you are pleased because something is good.

a. lazy      b. angry      c. sad      d. proud

64 - ----- means much more than usual.

a. Public      b. General      c. Especially      d. Generally

65 – Working with your hands is called-----

a. funny      b. spiritual      c. manual      d. mental

66 – At the airport, they ordered us to show our-----

a. food      b. ideas      c. passports      d. information

67 – Canada is ----- cold in winter.

a. special      b. especially      c. specialist      d. specialize

68 - ----- workers often have to wear boots and helmets.

a. Manual      b. Office      c. Bank      d. farm

69 – Our school is a very old-----

a. build      b. builds      c. building      d. buildings

70 – The ----- is always the first to arrive in the office

a. manage      b. manager      c. key      d. desk

71 – Mechanics need many ----- to understand how cars work.

a. socks      b. souvenirs      c. skulls      d. skills

72 – The lights needed to be repaired so we called the-----

a. oculist      b. pilot      c. electrician      d. plumber

73 – Students in ----- education don't go to technical schools.

a. general      b. technical      c. special      d. private

74 - ----- is very important because it gives us most of the food we eat.

a. tourism      b. industry      c. nursing      d. farming

75 – Why my brother----- from university, he wants to travel abroad.

a. escapes      b. graduates      c. runs      d. dies

76 - ----- means producing and making products.

a. Nursing      b. Industry      c. Dentistry      d. Tourism

77 – A ticket ----- works on a bus station.

a. designer      b. inspector      c. payer      d. dentist

78 – We asked the ----- to bring some water.

a. conductor      b. oculist      c. waiter      d. baker

79 – The manager told the ----- to sweep the floor.

a. postman      b. secretary      c. cleaner      d. director

80 - A..... Checks that you have paid when you go on a bus or train.

a. ticket inspector      b. cleaner      c. electrician      d. barber

81 - A..... washes floors and tidies rooms.



a. secretary b. manager c. officer d. cleaner

82 - You ask for a / an .....when a car or machine breaks down.

a. mechanic b. surgeon c. professor d. hairdresser

83 - A ..... is an important person in a bank, shop, sports team, etc.

a. captain b. nurse c. pilot d. manager

84 - A / An.....repaired the lights in my office.

a. mechanic b. robber c. thief d. journalist

85 - A good teacher always ----- his pupils to do their best.

a. stops b. prevents c. encourages d. neglects

86 - After finishing ----- school at 15, some students choose general education.

a. primary b. secondary c. preparatory d. university

87 - Students at technical schools learn new-----

a. films b. stories c. buttons d. skills

88 - Egyptian Dual Education ----- is very important.

a. food b. sport c. hobby d. system

89 - Life would be ----- without electricians, nurses, mechanics and farmers.

a. impossible b. possible c. enjoyable d. happy

90- At the train station, some people ----- the wrong train.

a. take b. sell c. buy d. drive

# Grammar

## Future forms

ملاحظات على طرق التعبير عن المستقبل

يوجد أربع طرق للتعبير عن المستقبل وهي :

1 - استخدام (will + inf)

2 - استخدام (am - is - are + going to + inf)

3 - استخدام (am - is - are + v + ing)

4 - استخدام المضارع البسيط (present simple)

أولا : استخدام (will + inf)

نستخدمها للتعبير عن التنبؤ والتوقع والوعد والقرار السريع والعمر أو السن.

1 - I think it **will rain** tomorrow. (**prediction**) تنبؤ

2 - If you get high mark, I **will buy** you a mobile. (**promise**)

3 - There is no sugar, I **will buy** some. (**quick decision**) قرار سريع

4 - My brother **will be** 30 next year.

ثانيا : استخدام (am - is - are + going to + inf)

نستخدمها للتعبير عن حدوث شيء طبقا لدليل وكذلك النية لفعل شيء

There are a lot of clouds. It **is going to rain**.

They have intention, they are **going to buy** a car.

معلومه هامة جدا

إذا جاءت كلمة (**think**) مع وجود دليل فإن الدليل هو الأقوي لذا نختار (**am - is - are going to**)

There are a lot of clouds, I think it is going to rain.

ثالثا : استخدام المضارع المستمر (am - is - are + V + ing)

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الأشياء التي رتبنا أن نفعلها في المستقبل

They are visiting Aswan tomorrow. (**It is arranged**)

They are playing football after two days. (**They have arranged that**)

رابعا : استخدام المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل

نستخدم المضارع البسيط أي المصدر بدون اضافات أو المصدر المنهى بـ (**s-es-ies**) مع الأشياء التي ستحدث طبقا لجدول زمني مثل مواعيد وسائل المواصلات والأفلام في السينما والامتحانات

The train **leaves** at 9 p.m.

The film **starts** at 12 as usual.

What time **does** your train **arrive** on Saturday?

## Possibility and recommendation in the past

ملاحظات على الاحتمال والتوصية والندم في الماضي

1 - Might have + p.p.

نستخدمها للتعبير عن الاحتمال في الماضي :

He **might** have taken the book, I am not sure.

Ali **might** have broken the glass.

2 - Must have + P.P.

نستخدمها للتعبير عن التأكد من حدوث شيء في الماضي :

I **must** have left my books at home. I am sure.

I am sure Ali didn't take the train. He **must** have taken the bus.

He **must** have regretted smoking.

3 – Should have + P.P.

Shouldn't have + P . P.

نستخدمها للتعبير عن التوصية أو الندم في الماضي بمعنى كان / ما كان ينبغي أن :-

✂ He didn't study hard. He **should** have studied hard.

✂ You **shouldn't** have gone to bed late last night.

✂ He **should** have talked to his parents.

المباشر وغير مباشر **Reported Speech**

أولا الجملة الخبرية

عند تحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر الى غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

1 – نحول فعل القول كالآتي :-

say	say	say to	tell
says	says	says to	tells
said	said	said to	told

✂ He **says to** me, "Ali will travel abroad."

✂ He **tells** me that Ali will travel abroad.

2 – نحذف الـ ( , , ) والأقواس ونربط بكلمة (that) ويأتي بعدها فاعل ثم فعل.

✂ She said to them, "He is watching TV."

✂ She told them **that** he was watching TV.

3 – اذا جاء فعل القول مضارع لا نغير الأزمنة في الأقواس

✂ Ali **says to** me, "They **are** playing football."

✂ Ali **tells** me that they **are** playing football.

ولكن اذا جاء فعل القول ماضي نحول كل زمن او فعل الى ماضية كالآتي :-

✂ He **said to** them, "Ali **has** played football."

✂ He **told** them that Ali **had** played football.

ويتم تحويل الأزمنة كالآتي :-

<b>present</b> simple	<b>past</b> simple	play/plays	<b>played</b>
<b>present</b> continuous	<b>past</b> continuous	am /is /are playing	<b>was/ were playing</b>
<b>present</b> perfect	<b>past</b> perfect	has/have played	<b>had played</b>
<b>past</b> simple	<b>past</b> perfect	played	<b>had played</b>
<b>will</b>	<b>would</b>	will play	<b>would play</b>
<b>can</b>	<b>could</b>	can play	<b>could play</b>
<b>may</b>	<b>might</b>	may play	<b>might play</b>
<b>have to - has to - must</b>	<b>had to</b>	have to play	<b>had to play</b>
<b>am - is - are</b>	<b>was - were</b>	am playing	<b>was playing</b>

ويتم تحويل أسماء الإشارة وعلامات الأزمنة كالآتي :-

<b>this</b>	<b>that</b>
<b>these</b>	<b>those</b>
<b>here</b>	<b>there</b>
<b>now</b>	<b>then</b>
<b>yesterday</b>	<b>the day before</b>
<b>next</b>	<b>the following</b>
<b>tomorrow</b>	<b>the following day</b>
<b>ago</b>	<b>before</b>

today

that day

last week

the week before

✂ She **said to** her mother, " I **am** travelling **next month**."

✂ She **told** her mother that she **was** travelling the **following month**.

✂ Dina **said**, " They did this quiz **last week**."

✂ Dina **said** that they had done that quiz **the week before**.

4 - يتم تحويل ضمائر الفاعل داخل الأقواس كالآتي : -

1 - إذا جاء الفاعل ( he - she - it - they ) لا يتم تحويلهم ويبقوا كما هم : -

✂ Mother said, " **He** is eating lunch now."

✂ Mother said that **he** was eating lunch then.

2 - الضمائر ( I - we ) يتم تحويلهم الى المتكلم أي فاعل جملة القول :

✂ **He** said to them, " **I** have won the prize."

✂ **He** told them that **he** had won the prize.

3 - الضمير ( you ) يتم تحويله الى المفعول اي المستمع : -

✂ He said to **them**, " **You** can go out."

✂ He told them that **they** could go out.

وإذا لم يأتى مفعول فيتم تحويلها الى ( I )

✂ He said, " **You** can go out."

✂ He said that **I** could go out.

إذا جاء الكلام داخل الأقواس حقيقة علمية لا نغير زمن الفعل حتى لو كان فعل القول ماضي : -

✂ He **said**, " the sun **is bigger** than the moon."

✂ He **said** that the sun **is bigger** than the moon.

وكذلك إذا قيل الكلام منذ فترة قصيرة في وجود كلمات مثل ( now - just now - a moment ago ) خارج الأقواس

✂ He said to me **just now**, " I **will** buy a car."

✂ He told me just now that he **will** buy a car.

ثانيا الجملية الأمرية (imperative)

تحويل الجملية الأمرية من مباشر الى غير مباشر

1 - نحول فعل القول الى اي كلمة من الكلمات الآتية حسب المعنى

**told - asked - advised - warned - threatened - ordered**

2 - نحذف الأقواس ونضع ( to ) إذا كان الأمر مثبت وإذا كان الأمر منفي نحذف ( don't ) ونضع ( not to )

✂ He said to me, " **Take** the medicine."

✂ He advised me **to take** the medicine.

✂ She said to them, " **Open** the books."

✂ She asked them **to open** the books.

✂ Ali said to them, " **Don't** waste your time."

✂ Ali warned them **not to** waste their time.

3 - إذا جاءت كلمة please داخل الأقواس يتم حذفها كالآتي : -

✂ " **Please**, don't be late." the teacher said.

✂ The teacher advised them not to be late.

4 - إذا جاء جملة أمر داخل الأقواس نضع بينهما كلمة ( and ) عند التحويل كالآتي : -

✂ He said to them, " Study hard. Don't waste your time."

✂ He advised them to study hard **and** not to waste their time.



# choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1 – I think it ----- tomorrow.

- a. will rain      b. is raining      c. rains      d. is going to rain

2 – The bus to Aswan----- at ten past six this evening.

- a. will leave      b. leaves      c. is leaving      d. is going to leave

3 – My neighbours -----to a new house next month.

- a. move      b. moving      c. moves      d. are moving

4 – Let's walk quickly the shop ----- in ten minutes.

- a. closes      b. closed      c. was closed      d. are closing

5 – I am hungry. I think I ----- a sandwich.

- a. am buying      b. buy      c. will buy      d. going buy

6 – Ahmed's uncle is ill so he ----- to work tomorrow.

- a. is not going      b. didn't go      c. wasn't going      d. went

7 – What time ----- the coach go?

- a. does      b. do      c. will      d. is

8 – My daughter Bosy ----- 4 years next year.

- a. will be      b. is being      c. be      d. is going to be

9 – We are ----- the sleeper train tonight.

- a. take      b. took      c. taking      d. will take

10 – The train----- at seven o'clock.

- a. will leave      b. leaves      c. is leaving      d. is going to leave

11 – We ----- in the restaurant. We have arranged this.

- a. are going to eat      b. are eating      c. will eat      d. eat

12 – I think it ----- hot in Aswan.

- a. is going to be      b. will be      c. is going      d. are

13 – There are many dark clouds. I think it-----

- a. is raining      b. will rain      c. is going to rain      d. rains

14 – If you come late, I -----punish.

- a. am      b. will      c. am going      d. going

15 – We have arranged everything, we ----- next week.

- a. travel      b. are travelling      c. are going to travel      d. will travel

16 – I intend, I ----- a new car.

- a. am buying      b. will buy      c. am going to buy      d. buy

17 – The phone is ringing, I ----- it.

- a. will answer      b. answer      c. am answering      d. am going to answer

18 – She is clever, I think she -----the exam.

- a. is going to pass      b. passes      c. will pass      d. is passing

19 – I am sure, you----- the film.

- a. will enjoy      b. enjoy      c. is enjoying      d. is going to enjoy

20 – The next plane----- tomorrow at 7 a.m.

- a. is going to leave      b. is leaving      c. leaves      d. will leave

21 – I might have ----- this film already.

- a. see      b. saw      c. seen      d. sees

22 – I am sure, I ----- my book at home.

- a. may have      b. must have      c. might have      d. should have

- 23 – There is no train to Omar's village. He -----have taken the bus.  
a. may      b. might      c. can't      d. must
- 24 – He ----- have eaten the bad food.  
a. willb. should      c. must      d. shouldn't
- 25 – He was wrong. He ----- have been right.  
a. must      b. might      c. should      d. can't
- 26 – They ----- have arrived early.  
a. shouldn't      b. should      c. mustn't      d. won't
- 27 – I think my grandfather----- have visited England. I am not sure.  
a. shouldn'tb. should      c. might      d. must
- 28 – It----- have been winter when they took this photo. I am certain.  
a. must      b. might      c. may      d. should
- 29 – He ----- have been ill. I am sure.  
a. might      b. may      c. must      d. mustn't
- 30 – You ----- have drunk this can it was very bad.  
a. shouldn't      b. should      c. must      d. can
- 31 – You ----- have tried this mobile. it is very useful.  
a. mustn't      b. shouldn't      c. should      d. can't
- 32 - I'm sorry I didn't meet you in the park. I ----- have phoned to tell you I was ill.  
a. shouldn'tb. should      c. mustn't      d. will
- 33 – Did I really say that? I am not sure. I ----- have forgotten.  
a. must      b. mustn't      c. willd. am
- 34 – He ----- have written this letter, he is illiterate.  
a. should      b. can't      c. must      d. might
- 35 – Waleed can't find his book. He ----- have lost it on his way home.  
a. willb. can't      c. mustn't      d. might
- 36 – The ice cream was nice! you ----- have tried it.  
a. can't      b. shouldn't      c. should      d. mustn't
- 37 – He can't have been clever, he ----- have been lazy.  
a. can't      b. mustn't      c. must      d. won't
- 38 – He ----- have become addicted. I am not sure.  
a. should      b. might      c. must      d. shouldn't
- 39 – The exam----- have been difficult. No one got 100%.  
a. should      b. can't      c. must      d. shouldn't
- 40 – I am sure, he -----pass his next exam. He is very clever.  
a. wouldn't      b. didn't      c. will      d. can't
- 41 – He ----- me that he would buy a car.  
a. told      b. said      c. say      d. says
- 42 – She told me that she----- he homework.  
a. does      b. will do      c. did      d. have done
- 43 – He warned me ----- come late again.  
a. don't      b. to      c. not to      d. didn't
- 44 – I told him that it -----my first job.

a. will                      b. was                      c. is                      d. has

45 – The manager ----- me that the metro would open in 2022.

a. tells                      b. says                      c. told                      d. said

46 – Ali said that he ----- from Egypt.

a. came      b. will come c. comes      d. coming

47 – My mother ordered me -----tidy my room.

a. didn't      b. don't      c. to      d. not to

48 – He told me just now that he ----- tomorrow.

a. had travelled      b. was travelling      c. will travel      d. would travel

49 – “----- be late,” said my teacher.

a. Don't      b. To      c. Not to      d. Didn't

50 – We asked the waiter ----- bring us some water.

a. if      b. that      c. to      d. whether

51 – The ticket inspector warned us ----- look out of the window.

a. doesn't      b. don't      c. not to      d. to

52 – The mechanic advised the driver ----- the oil.

a. to changing      b. don't change      c. to change      d. to changed

53 – The baker said that her cakes ----- the best in the village.

a. have been      b. has been      c. were      d. are

54 – The manager told the cleaner to ----- the desks.

a. clean      b. cleans      c. cleaned      d. cleaning

55 – He told me ----- he would help me.

a. if      b. to      c. that      d. whether

56 – He told me a moment ago that he -----tomorrow.

a. didn't arrive      b. would arrive      c. had arrived      d. will arrive

57 – He said that he ----- working on a project.

a. is      b. was      c. have      d. has

58 – The manager told him ----- wear a helmet to protect himself.

a. don't      b. never      c. not to      d. to

59 – He asked her to ----- him about her work experience.

a. telling      b. told      c. tells      d. tell

60 – The doctor advised me ----- eat healthy food.

a. to      b. not to      c. don't      d. doesn't

## Rewrite the following sentences:

1 - “Don't touch the snake,” Amira said to Asmaa.

(warned)

2 - “Sit down,” the teacher said to the class.

(ordered)

3 - “Go on! You can swim across the pool!” Amgad's father said to him.

(asked)

4 - “The museum is next to the park,” Mr El-Baz said to Omar.

(told)

5- “I would like to read the book?” Randa said to Reem.

(told)

6 – “English is our favourite subject,” my friends said to me.

(told)

7 – “I am learning how to swim,” said Tarek.

(that)

8 – “The new shop will open in two weeks' time,” Sara told us.

(would)

9 – “My sister wants to buy a book,” said Ahmed.

( Ahmed said)

10 – “I come from Egypt,” said Ali.	(reported speech)
11 – “Breathe in,” the doctor said.	(asked)
12 – “Tidy your room!” said my mother.	(ordered)
13 – “Please don’t be late,” the teacher said.	(warned)
14 – He told me that they would travel the following day.	(said to)
15 – He warned me not to touch the wire.	(said to me)
16 – I have arranged to visit Aswan.	(visiting)
17 – I intend to visit Aswan.	(going)
18 – Our plane is at 9 p.m.	(leaves)
19 – we are going to buy a villa.	(intend)
20 – I promise to buy you a mobile.	(will)
21 – Ali’s intention is to be a doctor.	(going to)
22 – They are going to sell the car.	(intend)
23 – He will give me a present.	(promises)
24 – There are dark clouds in the sky.	( I think)
25 – The bus is at three o’clock tomorrow.	(arrives)
26 – She has arranged to study English.	(studying)
27 – I am going to leave Egypt.	(intend)
28 – She decided to marry Ali.	(going)
29 – Mona’s intention is to be an engineer.	(going)
30 – It is arranged to borrow the book.	( I )
31 – Ali did very badly in the exams.	(should)
32 – Your brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill.	(shouldn’t)
33 – He didn’t help his friend.	(should)
34 – She put much sugar in the coffee.	(shouldn’t)
35 – I am sure, he killed the girl.	(must)
36 – I am not sure, they took the money.	( might)
37 – He ate too much rice and became fat.	( shouldn’t)
38 – Bassant didn’t revise well for her tests.	(Should)
39 – It is probable that Mona lost her mobile.	(might)
40 – He insulted his friend.	(shouldn’t)
41 – Maha forgot her books at home.	(shouldn’t)
42 – He ignored his father’s advice.	(shouldn’t / should)
43 – Dina should have arrived early.	(didn’t)
44 – She felt ill after eating the bad ice cream.	(shouldn’t)
45 – He didn’t kill the man.	(must)



Excellence

PART

2

FINAL  
REVISION

Booklet

PREP

3

Revision (PART 2 2021)

Unit (13/14&15)

*With best wishes*

# vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
observe	يلاحظ	the earth	الأرض	freeze	يتجمد
observatory	مرصد	the moon	القمر	minus	سالب
astronomy	الفلك	shoot	ينطلق بسرعة	according to	طبقاً لـ
astronomer	عالم فلك	rock	صخرة	telescope	تلسكوب
solar	شمسي	a piece	قطعة	hobbies	هوايات
system	نظام	burn	يحترق	explain	يشرح
planet	كوكب	disappear	يختفي	an hour	في
star	نجم	fall	يقع	wonder	يتساءل
size	حجم	shine	تشرق	made of	صنع من
shape	شكل	degree	درجة	fact	حقيقة
space	فضاء	around	حول	gas	غاز
object	شيء	architect	مهندس	in turn	بالدور
polite	مؤدب	dishes	أطباق	Art gallery	معرض
until	حتي	painting	لوحة	Bibliotheca	مكتبة
put up	يرفع	tomb	قبر	misprint	خطأ
call out	ينادي	charity	إحسان	misread	يسيء
object	شيء	competition	منافسة	architect	مهندس
polite	مؤدب	archaeologis	عالم اثار	Art gallery	معرض
until	حتي	decorate	يزخرف	Bibliotheca	مكتبة
decide	يقرر	vote	يصوت	side	جانب
geography	جغرافيا	man-made	صنع إنسان	dislike	يكره
include	يشمل	round	دائري	latest	أحدث
behave	يتصرف	behavior	سلوك	technology	تكنولوجيا
include	يشمل	round	دائري	Arab	عربي
wonders	عجائب	Taj Mahal	تاج محل	country	دولة
a list	قائمة	India	الهند	develop	ينمي
amazing	مذهل	marble	رخام / مرمر	development	تنمية
statues	تماثيل	ruler	حاكم	expect	يتوقع
temples	معابد	fountain	نافورة	social	اجتماعي
monuments	اثار	dome	قبة	media	إعلام
Greece	اليونان	minarets	مآذن	company	شركة
Turkey	تركيا	damage	يتلف	advertise	يعلن
As well as	ايضا	pollution	التلوث	advertisement	إعلان
hanging	معلقة	reason	سبب	arrange	يرتب
gardens	حدائق	add	يضيف	arrangement	ترتيب
Babylon	بابل	UNESCO	اليونسكو	text	نص
Iraq	العراق	protect	يحمي	tablet	تابليت
lighthouse	منارة	preserve	يحفظ	allow	يسمح
original	اصلي	recent	حديث	club	نادي

# definitions

<b>astronomer</b>	The scientific study of the stars and planets .
<b>astronomy</b>	The scientist who studies stars
<b>degree</b>	A unit for measuring temperature .
<b>planet</b>	A very large round object in space that moves round the sun.
<b>solar system</b>	The sun and all the planets that move around it
<b>shooting stars</b>	Is a piece of rock that moves quickly through space.
<b>gas</b>	A substance in a form like air that you usually can't see or feel .
<b>wonder</b>	To want to know / to ask
<b>dome</b>	the top of a building that is the shape of half a circle
<b>marble</b>	a very hard white, black or pink rock used for building
<b>monument</b>	something that is built to remind people of an important event or
<b>minaret</b>	a tall, thin tower
<b>Greece</b>	a country between Italy and Turkey
<b>A ruler</b>	a person like a king who can tell people what to do
<b>Man-made</b>	Something that is not natural but made by man
<b>Waterfall</b>	a place where water flows over down over a rock
<b>vote</b>	To show which plan you support
<b>development</b>	the processes of becoming bigger, better, etc.
<b>advertise</b>	tell people about something in newspapers, on TV, etc.
<b>arrange</b>	make plans for something to happen
<b>pay</b>	give someone money for something that you are buying
<b>Social media</b>	websites used by people to communicate
<b>transfer</b>	move someone or something from one place to another .....
<b>scam</b>	Dishonest plan , usually to get money .
<b>smartphone</b>	A mobile which works as a computer .
<b>Privacy settings</b>	A system on social networking sites that you can use to make sure that only people that you know can read messages and see information about you .
<b>development</b>	the processes of becoming bigger, better, etc.
<b>advertise</b>	tell people about something in newspapers, on TV, etc.

## Expressions and prepositions

<b>Solar system</b>	المجموعة الشمسية	<b>A piece of</b>	قطعة من
<b>A team of astronomers</b>	فريق من علماء الفلك	<b>Fall onto</b>	يقع علي
<b>Shapes and sizes</b>	أشكال وأحجام	<b>Travel through</b>	يسافر خلال
<b>Get hotter</b>	تصبح أكثر سخونة	<b>Turn around</b>	يدور حول
<b>Minus 153 degrees</b>	سالب ١٥٣ درجة	<b>Shine on</b>	تشرق علي
<b>Turns around itself</b>	تدور حول نفسها	<b>Thank for</b>	يشكر علي

## Wonders mentioned in the unit and their countries

<b>Lighthouse and the pyramids</b>	<b>Egypt</b>	<b>Petra</b>	<b>Jordon</b>
<b>Hanging gardens</b>	<b>Iraq</b>	<b>Colosseum</b>	<b>Italy</b>
<b>The statue of Zeus</b>	<b>Greece</b>	<b>Chichen Itza</b>	<b>Mexico</b>
<b>Taj Mahal</b>	<b>India</b>	<b>The Great Wall</b>	<b>China</b>

# Function Box

## Asking polite questions

الأسئلة المهيبة

Could you please explain to me why (I can't feel the earth turn)?

I wonder if you could tell me what (a star is made of).

I'd like to know if (you like your job).

Do you think we could (come and see the observatory one day)?

Asking for opinion السؤال عن الرأي

Expressing agreement/  
disagreement

What do you think of (the Sphinx)?

How do you feel about (the Cairo Tower)?

Do you agree?

I couldn't agree with you more.

That's (exactly) how I feel.

You have a point there

- I'm afraid I (totally) disagree.

- I feel completely the opposite

encouraging people to continue speaking

تشجيع الناس على اكمال الكلام

Great! What else does it say?

Really? Go on.

How wonderful! Tell me more.

Then what happened?

What happened after that?

## Grammar Reported speech

السؤال في المباشر وغير مباشر

يوجد نوعان من السؤال سؤال يبدأ بأداة استفهام وسؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد

خطوات تحويل السؤال من مباشر الى غير مباشر

١ - نحول فعل القول كالآتي: -

say – say to	ask	او اي كلمة تساويهم مثل <b>wanted to know – inquired – wondered</b> ولا يأتي بعدهم مفعول
says – says to	asks	
said – said to	asked	

✗ He **says to** me, "Have they watched TV?"

✗ He **asks** me if they have watched TV.

٢ - نحذف الـ (,) والأقواس ونربط بـ (**if – whether**) اذا بدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ثم فعل  
أما اذا بدأ السؤال بأداة الاستفهام فاننا نربط بأداة الاستفهام ويأتي بعدها فاعل ثم فعل... ونحذف علامة الاستفهام ونضع (.)

✗ She **says to** them, "when will Ali arrive?"

✗ She **asks** them **when** Ali will arrive.

✗ Dina **said to** Huda, "Can he win the cup?"

✗ Dina **asked** Huda **if** he could win the cup.

٣ - اذا جاء فعل القول مضارع تبقي الازمنة كما هي واذا جاء فعل القول ماضي نحول كل زمن الى ماضية

✗ She **says**, "Is he reading a story?" ➤ She **said**, "Is he reading a story?"

✗ She **asks** if he **is** reading a story. ➤ She **asked** if he **was** reading a story.

٤ - اذا جاء الفعل المساعد (**do – does – did**) يتم حذفهم عند التحويل: -

✗ He **said**, "Does she cook lunch?"

✗ He **asked** if she **cooked** lunch.



- ✗ He said, "Did she cook lunch?"  
 ✗ He asked if she had cooked lunch.

ملاحظه هامة

لتحويل الأزمنة وأسماء الأشارة والضمائر راجع الشرح في الوحدة (12)

٥ - ملخص هام جدا :-

بعد كل التحويل يأتي بعد كل من اداة الاستفهام كرابط و (if- whether) فاعل ثم فعل - ولو كان فعل القول مضارع نختار مضارع أو مستقبل ولو جاء فعل القول ماضي نختار ماضي الا في الحالات الشاذة

- ✗ He asked where I lived.  
 ✗ He asked if I lived in Cairo.  
 ✗ He asked whether I liked football or not.

## The present perfect passive

١ - المضارع التام يتكون كالاتى :-

مفعول + have / has + P.P + فاعل

- ✗ He has watched TV.  
 ✗ They have watched TV.

٢ - يتم النفي بوضع (not) بعد كل من have / has

- ✗ Ali hasn't taken the books.  
 ✗ We haven't met the tourist.

٣ - يستخدم المضارع التام مع كل من :-

since	for	just	already	yet	ever never
منذ (بداية الحدث)	لمدة (مدة الحدث)	للتو - حالا	بالفعل	حتى الان (في النفي)	السؤال - النفي

- ✗ He has studied for 3 years.  
 ✗ He has studied since 2015.  
 ✗ Have you ever seen a lion?  
 ✗ No, I have never seen a lion.  
 ✗ She has just arrived.  
 ✗ They haven't eaten lunch yet.  
 ✗ They have lived here for a year.

٤ - تكوين السؤال :-

Has / Have + فاعل + P.P -----?

- ✗ Has He mended the car? Yes, he has. No, he hasn't.  
 ✗ Have they seen the accident? Yes, they have. No, they haven't.

٥ - صيغة المبني للمجهول مع المضارع التام :-

مفعول + have / has + been + P.P  
 مفعول + have / has + not + P.P

- ✗ They have made plans.  
 ✗ Plans have been made.  
 ✗ We have sold the house.  
 ✗ The house has been sold.  
 ✗ He hasn't decided the date yet.

✗ The date hasn't been decided yet.

✗ Has she ironed the clothes?

✗ Have the clothes been ironed?

## if conditions

ملاحظات على حالات الشرط

يوجد ثلاث حالات رئيسية للشرط وهي :

١ - الحالة الأولى وتعتبر عت التوقع او الاحتمال في المستقبل والوعد والتهديد وتتكون كالآتي :

**If --- present simple (مضارع بسيط) ----- will /may/might+ مصدر**

✗ If you play well, you will win. (توقع)

✗ If he comes late, she will punish him. (تهديد)

✗ If they get high marks, I will reward them. (وعد)

٢ - الحالة الثانية وتعتبر عن الاستحالة في المضارع وتتكون كالآتي :

**If---- past simple (ماضي بسيط) ----- would /might/could+ مصدر**

✗ If he played well, he would win.

✗ If I were you, I would study hard.

✗ If I were rich, I would help them. مستحيل أن يكون غني في الوقت الحالي

معلومة هامة نستخدم التعبير الآتي لأعطاء النصيحة بمعنى (should) :

If I were you, I would + مصدر ----- = You should

If I were you, I wouldn't + مصدر ---- = you shouldn't

✗ If I were you, I would come early.

= You should come early.

٣ - الحالة الثالثة وتعتبر عن الندم والتمنى في الماضي وتتكون كالآتي :

**If --- past perfect (ماضي تام) --- would/might/could have + p.p**

✗ If they had played well, they would have won.

✗ If the doctor had arrived early, he would have saved the patient.

ملاحظات عامة

١ - يمكن استخدام (if) بمعنى اذا أو لو أما كلمة (unless) معناها اذا لم وهي عكسها :

✗ If he arrives early, he will catch the bus. (Unless)

✗ Unless he arrives early, he won't catch the bus.

ولاحظ أيضا أن :

**If + النفي = Unless**

✗ If he didn't arrive early, he would miss the bus. (Unless)

✗ Unless he arrived early, he would miss the bus.

٢ - يمكن أن تأتي (if) في أول الجملة أو في وسط الجملة :

✗ If she studied hard, she would come first.

✗ She would come first if she studied hard.

٣ - يمكن استخدام كلمة (could) للتعبير عن القدرة أو الاستطاعة وكلمة (might) للتعبير عن الاحتمال في كل

الحالات كالآتي :

✗ If he arrives early, he might catch the train.

✗ If he had been here yesterday, he could have helped me.

✗ If they had played well, they might have won the cup.

٤ - اذا جاء جملتين وطلب استخدام (if) فنحول الاثبات لنفي والنفي الى اثبات مع ملاحظة اذا جاء الزمن مضارع نستخدم الحالة الثانية واذا جاء الزمن ماضي نستخدم الحالة الثالثة ( هام جداً لسؤال الـ Rewrite )

1 - He plays well so he wins the match. (If)

هنا زمن الجملة مضارع لذا سوف نستخدم الحالة الثانية كالآتي : -

✗ If he didn't play well, he wouldn't win the match.

2 – They didn't arrive early so they missed the train. (If)

هنا زمن الجملة ماضي لذا سوف نستخدم الحالة الثالثة كالآتي : -

✗ If they had arrived early, they wouldn't have missed the train.

٥ – وإذا جاءت الحالة الثالثة من (if) وطلب استخدام (so) أو (because) فنستخدم الجملتين ماضي بسيط كالآتي: -

✗ If he had helped me, I wouldn't have failed. (so)

✗ He didn't help me, so I failed.

٦ – في حالة الاستفهام نستخدم الشكل الآتي : -

✗ What will happen if he studies hard?

✗ What would happen if he studied hard?

✗ What would have happened if he had studied hard?

انتبه جيدا في سؤال الـ ( Rewrite ) إذا جاءت (so) نبدأ بالجملة الأولى وإذا جاءت (because) نبدأ بالجملة الثانية كالآتي : -

✗ He didn't get high marks, because he didn't study hard. (If)

✗ If he had studied hard, he would have got high marks.

**Stop Here!!**

had	الحالة الثانية	مصدر + would	الحالة الثانية
had + p.p	الحالة الثالثة	would + have	الحالة الثانية
had had	الحالة الثالثة	would have + p.p	الحالة الثالثة

### 1 – Finish the following dialogue:

**Nora is talking to an astronomer**

<b>Nora:</b> Can I ask you some questions?
<b>Astronomer:</b> .....(1)-----
<b>Nora:</b> .....(2)----- -?
<b>Astronomer:</b> There are 8 planets in our solar system.
<b>Nora:</b> ..... (3) -----?
<b>Astronomer:</b> No, not all the planets have moons.
<b>Nora:</b> Thank you very much.
<b>Astronomer:</b> .....(4)-----

### 1 – Finish the following dialogue:

**Basant and Abdo are talking about the wonders.**

<b>Basant:</b> What is this list about?
<b>Abdo:</b> .....(1).....
<b>Basant:</b> Seven wonders! .....(2).....?
<b>Abdo:</b> Yes, there are some of them in Egypt.
<b>Basant:</b> ..... (3).....?
<b>Abdo:</b> They are the Pyramids and the Lighthouse.
<b>Basant:</b> Is there a lighthouse now?
<b>Abdo:</b> .....(4).....

### 1 – Finish the following dialogue:

Ali: (1)-----?
Dina: I am reading a report on the internet.
Ali: (2) -----?
Dina: It is about The Egyptians and the internet.
Ali: What else does it say?
Dina: (3) -----.
Ali: Really! so why we should give our personal information to others.
Dina: Because they might be thieves.
Ali: (4) ----- . Thank you

### Write what you would say: -

- 1.You want to encourage your friend to tell you more about the internet.
- 2.You are asked about your favourite social site.
- 3.You give your opinion of the internet.
- 4>Your sister says that Facebook wastes time, you agree.
- 5>Your father gave you a nice present.
- 6>Your mother asks if you have finished cleaning the kitchen.
- 7.The dishes are not clean yet.
- 8>Your friend asks you when the book club will meet.
- 9.You ask your friend about his opinion of the film.
- 10>Your friend thinks that the Suez Canal is a great project, you agree.
- 11.You are asked about your opinion of the Sphinx.
- 12.You ask your sister to open the window.
- 13>Your father asks you to bring him some water.
- 14.You are asked to close the door.
- 15.You ask your friend politely to lend you his pen.
- 16.You want your brother to help you.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.The earth is one of eight..... in our solar system.  
a. planets                      b. planes                      c. plants                      d. plans
- 2.- ..... is the study of the stars.  
a. farming                      b. astrology                      c. astronomy                      d. industry
- 3.Hassan is very interested in space and wants to be an.....  
a. nurse      b. dentist      c. farmer      d. astronomer
- 4.At night in the desert, you can sometimes see.....which disappear very quickly.  
a. sunb. camels      c. shooting stars      d. moons
- 5.The science museum has a ..... of rock from the moon.  
a. bike      b. piece      c. pack      d. bottle
- 6.In Cairo, it is usually about 14 ..... in January.  
a. agrees      b. degrees      c. pots      d. shots
- 7.Our..... includes the sun and some planets.  
a. solar system      b. lunar system      c. teaching systemd. free system



8. Some of the planets have .....  
a. friends   b. moons   c. plants   d. noons
9. .... can look at the planets and stars through a telescope.  
a. Dentists   b. Farmers   c. Astrologers   d. Astronomers
10. The biggest object in our solar system is the.....  
a. sun   b. moon   c. earth   d. meteorite
11. The earth..... around the sun.  
a. stops   b. turns   c. falls   d. freezes
12. Some stars are made of.....  
a. gas   b. rockets   c. metal   d. paper
13. There are eight ..... moving round the sun.  
a. planets   b. suns   c. plays   d. poles
14. To make something easy to understand.....  
a. plain   b. plane   c. explain   d. complain
15. If you are....., you speak and behave in a nice way.  
a. polite   b. rude   c. impolite   d. liar
16. .... means you want to know why.  
a. lie   b. wonder   c. wander   d. die
17. A..... is a building from which scientists watch space.  
a. john   b. library   c. laboratory   d. observatory
18. Could you..... answer some questions for me?  
a. possibly   b. possible   c. impossible   d. probable
19. Moons go around.....  
a. planets   b. stars   c. plants   d. stairs
20. The sun is a star in our solar.....  
a. system   b. sister   c. power   d. poem
21. A ..... star is a piece of rock that moves quickly through space.  
a. laughing   b. happy   c. flying   d. shooting
22. On some planets, it is more than 400 .....  
a. degrees   b. hot   c. shot   d. agrees
23. Moons are different shapes and .....  
a. sizes   b. rises   c. shops   d. ships
24. When the sun..... on the moon, it is very hot.  
a. shots   b. looks   c. shines   d. likes
25. This side of the moon is freezing at around.....153 degrees.  
a. plus   b. minus   c. add   d. up
26. Could you explain why we can't feel the earth.....?  
a. turn   b. sleep   c. speak   d. swims
27. The earth turns itself at about 1.670 km..... hour.  
a. for   b. the   c. a   d. an
28. Are you ..... me, pupils?  
a. follows   b. following   c. follow   d. followed
29. I ..... if you could tell me what a star is made of.  
a. cry   b. wander   c. wonder   d. tell
30. There are many interesting.....about stars.

a. mice      b. faces      c. facts      d. fog

**31. My favourite part of the job is when I use the .....to look at the stars.**

a. telescope   b. glasses   c. scissors   d. booklet .

**32. The Taj Mahal is a ..... in India.**

a. pyramid   b. moment   c. monument      d. tower

**33. A ---...something that is built to remind people of an important event or person**

a. monument      b. fall      c. waterfall   d. tunnel

**34. A very hard white, black or pink rock used for building is called .....**

a. marble   b. purple   c. yellow   d. greed

**35. A..... is a tall, thin tower.**

a. funnel   b. minaret   c. tunnel   d. knife

**36. A ..... is a person like a king who can tell people what to do.**

a. ruler      b. farmer   c. headmaster      d. headmistress

**37. .... is a country between Italy and Turkey.**

a. Greece   b. Egypt   c. Iraq      d. India

**38. The top of a building that is the shape of half a circle is a .....**

a. pyramid   b. tower      c. gum      d. dome

**39. Lake Nasser is a ..... lake.**

a. traditional      b. modern   c. man-made      d. personal

**40. Baghdad is a city in .....**

a. Egypt   b. Iraq      c. Greece   d. England

**41. There is a big ..... where the river goes over a cliff.**

a. film      b. water cycle      c. waterfall   d. water drop

**42. You can usually find trees and birds at an .....**

a. art gallery      b. adventure      c. oasis      d. object

**43. The floor of this mosque is made of .....**

a. foam      b. bread      c. marble   d. paper

**44. The roof of the mosque is a huge, round .....**

a. metro   b. tunnel      c. dome      d. plate

**45. The top of the tall..... reminds me of the shape of a pencil.**

a. fall   b. river      c. book      d. minaret

**46. A fire has ..... ancient objects.**

a. built      b. destroyed      c. decorated      d. preserved

**47. You should ask before..... decisions.**

a. eating   b. singing   c. making   d. reading

**48. “ re” means .....**

a. before   b. again      c. in      d. after

**49. Do badly or wrong means .....**

a. miss      b. catch      c. win      d. pass

**50. The teacher asked Hassan to ..... his homework as he didn't do it well.**

a. redo      b. buy      c. clean      d. miss

**51. Look it says “ The spinxs” . This is a .....**

a. misprint   b. correct   c. right      d. not wrong

**52. It is a good idea to ..... the school books many times.**

a. burn      b. misread   c. reread      d. kill

**53. This book is about New ..... of the World like the Pyramids.**

- a. Trees    b. wonders    c. wanders    d. planets

**54. They wrote a ..... of the seven wonders.**

- a. ball    b. list    c. menu    d. recipe

**55. The ..... Gardens of Babylon are in Iraq.**

- a. Hanging    b. Floating    c. Swimming    d. Sleeping

**56. The Ruler built the Taj Mahal to ..... his wife.**

- a. remind    b. remember    c. burn    d. kill

**57. The Great Pyramid is one of the ..... wonders.**

- a. original    b. fake    c. new    d. modern

**58. You are right, I couldn't ..... more.**

- a. agree    b. disagree    c. refuse    d. free

**59. The UNESCO helps to ..... important sites.**

- a. destroy    b. protect    c. infect    d. burn

**60. The Taj Mahal has four .....**

- a. minarets    b. trees    c. branches    d. pyramids

**61. The Cairo Tower should be ..... the list.**

- a. from    b. in    c. on    d. by

**62. The processes of becoming bigger, better, etc is .....**

- a. development    b. thirst    c. hunger    d. food

**63. .... is to tell people about something in newspapers, on TV, etc.**

- a. advertise    b. kill    c. buy    d. save

**64. .... means to make plans for something to happen**

- a. exchange    b. danger    c. arrange    d. range

**65. .... is to need or ask you to do something**

- a. inquire    b. fire    c. require    d. hire

**66. .... are the websites used by people to communicate.**

- a. Social work    b. Social fans    c. Social books    d. Social media

**67. To move someone or something from one place to another means.....**

- a. transfusion    b. transmit    c. translate    d. transfer

**68. Have you read about the latest..... in computers?**

- a. develop    b. development    c. develops    d. developed

**69. There is an ..... in the newspaper for a new computer game.**

- a. advertisement    b. idea    c. robbery    d. book

**70. It is a ..... that all manual workers wear boots.**

- a. will    b. theft    c. require    d. requirement

**71. It is very expensive to ..... something on TV.**

- a. see    b. watch    c. advertise    d. watching

**72. The students have ..... to see the teacher after school.**

- a. planning    b. intend    c. decide    d. arranged

**73. Our teacher always ..... us to do better.**

- a. lies    b. discourages    c. encourages    d. makes

**74. Sixty-four ..... of Egyptians have Smartphones.**

- a. recent    b. percent    c. cent    d. accent

75. Egypt has the ..... number of internet users in the Arab World.  
a. high      b. highest      c. as high      d. higher
76. More and more people have problems ..... scam.  
a. under      b. within      c. for      d. with
77. The thieves..... the bank and ran away.  
a. painted      b. stole      c. robbed      d. insulted
78. How much did they ..... the man for repairing the computer?  
a. price      b. cost      c. pay      d. buy
79. Some messages on the internet are not real. They are .....from people to get information from you.  
a. scams      b. scans      c. cons      d. coins
80. We read about some interesting ..... in science on a website.  
a. fashion      b. failure      c. develops      d. developments
81. A ..... went into the house in the night and took the new TV.  
a. robber      b. pilot      c. seller      d. sailor
82. Privacy ..... on social networking sites make sure that only people who you know can see information about you.  
a. settings      b. sized      c. prizes      d. rises
83. In some countries, you can ..... money to or from a bank.  
a. transfuse      b. transplant      c. transport      d. transfer
84. The ancient wonders are ..... great danger.  
a. from      b. by      c. in      d. with
85. The projects have also been put on an online ..... for all people.  
a. gallery      b. basket      c. bin      d. pin
86. Ramy's bike is broken. How can we ..... it?  
a. repair      b. destroy      c. solve      d. melt
87. We saw famous paintings in the new art.....  
a. pool      b. gallery      c. broacher      d. bank
88. The Sphinx is a famous..... that tourists visit.  
a. tomb      b. temple      c. monument      d. stadium
89. All monuments should be.....  
a. robbed      b. stolen      c. protected      d. destroyed
90. Many jobs ..... dealing with social media.  
a. require      b. fire      c. inquire      d. hire
91. They have ..... everything. They are buying a new house.  
a. arrange      b. arranged      c. arranges      d. arranging
92. We should know about the ..... technology.  
a. late      2.b. latest      3.c. last      4.d. list
93. He asked how many planets .....  
a. are there      b. were there      c. there are      d. there were
94. She ..... if all the planets had moons.  
a. asks      b. asked      c. said      d. told
95. Nora asked what a shooting star.....  
a. is      b. was      c. are      d. were
96. Ziad asked..... it was hot or cold on the moon.



a. to b. weather c. if d. not to

**97. He asked me what .....**

a. is my name b. my name is c. was my name d. my name was

**98. The students asked the professor if ..... an astronomer.**

a. she was b. she is c. was she d. is she

**99. Lina asked why telescopes ..... expensive.**

a. is b. are c. were d. was

**100. I asked her what she was.....**

a. do b. doing c. did d. does

**101. Imad asked me what.....**

a. my phone is b. my phone was c. is my phone d. was my phone

**102. We asked the scientist where .....**

a. is his telescope b. was his telescope c. his telescope is d. his telescope was

**103. I asked Nader which book..... his.**

a. is b. was c. are d. were

**104. He..... me when he would arrive.**

a. asked b. asks c. wanted to know d. wondered

**105. She asks me if ..... my homework.**

a. do I b. I did c. I do d. did I

**106. Ali asked me ..... I liked football or not.**

a. weather b. whether c. when d. where

**107. Mona ..... them how many books they had read.**

a. told b. tells c. asked d. asks

**108. He advised me ..... study hard.**

a. if b. not to c. to d. whether

**109. She told me that.....**

a. she wins b. she won c. won she d. wins she

**110. Salma wondered ..... I had played football.**

a. if b. that c. whether d. then

**111. The doctor advised me to..... my medicine.**

a. taking b. took c. take d. takes

**112. He asked, "where .....?"**

a. Ali lived b. did Ali live c. Ali lives d. Ali had lived

**113. The final seven places.....**

a. have chosen b. have been chosen c. has chosen d. has been chosen

**114. A new list of wonders has .....**

a. write b. written c. been written d. writing

**115. The Taj Mahal ..... by millions of people.**

a. visited b. has been visited c. has visited d. visit

**116. Have you ..... seen a lion?**

a. never b. ever c. since d. for

**117. She hasn't cooked lunch .....**

a. since b. yet c. ago d. for

**118. 6 – They have watched TV ..... 3 hours.**

a. ago b. for c. since d. yet

**119.7 – Mona has eaten sandwiches ..... an hour.**

a. for b. since c. yet d. ago

**120.8 – It has been ..... by pollution.**

a. damaging b. damages c. damage d. damaged

**121.Plans ..... for the next trip.**

a. has made b. have been made c. have made d. has been made

**122.The dishes ..... yet.**

a. have washed b. haven't been washed c. have been washed d. has washed

**123.Ali ..... the e-mails.**

a. have written b. has written c. have been written d. has been written

**124.The prize has been..... by a fifteen-year-old man.**

a. wining b. wins c. wind. won

**125.The new house has..... built.**

a. being b. been c. be d. is

**126.The match ..... been won by our team.**

a. is b. have c. has d. are

**127.The canal ..... dug.**

a. have been b. has been c. has d. have

**128.Have the books .....?**

a. wrote b. written c. been written d. be written

**129.She has washed the dishes ..... an hour.**

a. ago b. since c. for d. yet

**130.She hasn't bought the dishes.....**

a. just b. ago c. yet d. for

**131.The Metro has been built ..... 2005.**

a. since b. for c. yet d. ago

**132.Abdou and Mohamed ..... taken some photos.**

a. has b. have c. is d. was

**133.If I ..... taller, I would be good at basketball.**

a. had b. is c. am d. were

**134.If I ..... much money, I would help the poor.**

a. were b. have c. had d. am

**135.If you ..... Japanese, you might get a job in Tokyo.**

a. had learnt b. learnt c. learning d. learns

**136.If I went to England, I ..... visit London.**

a. will b. had c. might d. won't

**137.We could go shopping if we ..... enough money.**

a. were b. have c. had had d. had

**138.If we ..... each other, the world will be a better place.**

a. loving b. had love c. love d. loved

**139.If he told his parents, they would ..... him.**

a. helping b. helped c. help d. helps

**140.We..... go to England if we had friends or family there.**

a. would b. will c. won't d. were

**141.If Hassan ..... older, he could learn to drive a car.**

a. is    b. was    c. would be    d. had been

**142.If I knew the answer to the question, I..... you.**

a. will tell    b. tell    c. won't tell    d. would tell

**143.If Hala ..... German, she might talk to the German tourists**

a. spoke    b. speak    c. will speak    d. had spoken

**144.If he read really carefully, he..... understand the book.**

a. can't    b. don't    c. would    d. won't

**145.If he ..... time, he would visit his friends.**

a. have    b. had have    c. had had    d. had

**146.If he ..... time, he would have visited his friends.**

a. has    b. have    c. had had    d. had

**147..... he to study hard, he would succeed.**

a. Were    b. Should    c. If    d. will

**148.Don't come late or I ..... you.**

a. punished    b. had punished    c. will punish    d. had punish

**149.If only the doctor had arrived early, he ..... the patient.**

a. might save    b. would have saved    c. would save    d. will save

**150.If I were you, I would study hard. This is .....**

a. promise    b. threat    c. advice    d. present

**151.If he helped them, they ..... win.**

a. will    b. could    c. can    d. won't

**152.If I were a bird, I ..... fly.**

a. will    b. might    c. wont    d. would have

**Rewrite the following sentences:**

**1.“Do you like reading, Taha?” asked the teacher. (The teacher)**

**2.Hania asked,” When is the next bus leaving?” (Wanted to know)**

**3.“How long does it take to get to school?” Wards said to me. (asked)**

**4.“Will you finish your homework before dinner?” Ali said to his sister. (asked)**

**5.She said to them,” Did he watch the film?” (if)**

**6.Salma said to me” What is your name?” (asked)**

**7.“How many planets are there?” He said. (He wanted to know)**

**8.The student said to the professor,” Are you an astronomer?” (asked)**

**9.“What are you doing?” said Rofaida. (asked)**

**10.Aya said” Do all the planets have moons?” (asked)**

**11.“What is a shooting star?” Jude said. (inquired)**

**12.Ziad said to him,” Is it hot or cold on the moon?” (wondered)**

**13.“Can you play the guitar?” Nabila asked Hana. (if)**

**14.He asked me when they would come. (said to me)**

**15.They have painted the building again. (been)**

**16.Someone has drawn a picture in my diary. (A picture)**

**17.Our school has won the competition. (passive)**

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| <b>18.</b> Archaeologists have found an ancient site.                | <b>(been)</b>          |
| <b>19.</b> lot of money has been collected for the charity.          | <b>(We)</b>            |
| <b>20.</b> They have planted trees along the river.                  | <b>(Trees)</b>         |
| <b>21.</b> Has she sent the e-mails?                                 | <b>(Have)</b>          |
| <b>22.</b> Teachers have taught us English.                          | <b>(been)</b>          |
| <b>23.</b> Mona watched TV a short time ago.                         | <b>(just)</b>          |
| <b>24.</b> They have played football since 2010.                     | <b>(for)</b>           |
| <b>25.</b> She has cooked lunch since 3 o'clock, it is 5 now.        | <b>(hours)</b>         |
| <b>26.</b> He hasn't taken the photos yet.                           | <b>(been)</b>          |
| <b>27.</b> Basant has cooked Pizza.                                  | <b>(been)</b>          |
| <b>28.</b> Meat has been cooked by Yasmeen.                          | <b>(has cooked)</b>    |
| <b>29.</b> The last time they ate fish was 2 years ago.              | <b>(for)</b>           |
| <b>30.</b> You should study hard.                                    | <b>(If I were you)</b> |
| <b>31.</b> If I were them, I wouldn't come late.                     | <b>(shouldn't)</b>     |
| <b>32.</b> He isn't tall so he can't play basketball.                | <b>(If)</b>            |
| <b>33.</b> He arrived late so he missed the plane.                   | <b>(If)</b>            |
| <b>34.</b> Perhaps if we see the teacher, we can tell her the truth. | <b>(might)</b>         |
| <b>35.</b> Ali didn't study hard so he failed.                       | <b>(If)</b>            |
| <b>36.</b> I didn't say hello because I didn't recognize you         | <b>(If)</b>            |
| <b>37.</b> Study hard or you will fail.                              | <b>(If)</b>            |
| <b>38.</b> If he had played well, he wouldn't have lost.             | <b>(so)</b>            |
| <b>39.</b> If he arrives early, he will catch the bus.               | <b>(Unless)</b>        |
| <b>40.</b> If he had helped me, I wouldn't have failed..             | <b>(because)</b>       |
| <b>41.</b> I advise you to do your best.                             | <b>(If)</b>            |
| <b>42.</b> If I were them, I wouldn't sell the car.                  | <b>(shouldn't)</b>     |
| <b>43.</b> If they don't play well, they will lose.                  | <b>(Unless)</b>        |
| <b>44.</b> If he played well, he would win                           | <b>(Were/Should)</b>   |





Excellence

PART

3

FINAL  
REVISION

Booklet

PREP

3

Revision (PART 2 2021)

Unit (16/17&18)

*With best wishes*

# Vocabulary

word	meaning	word	meaning	word	meaning
moral	مغزي قصة	golden	ذهبي	dress	يرتدي
ant	نملة	lay	تبيض	wonderful	رائع
grasshopper	جراد صغير	pick	يلتقط	terrible	فظيع
collect	يجمع	metal	معدن	copy	ينسخ
content	مسرور	find out	يكتشف	nearby	قريب
contents	محتويات	greedy	طماع	owner	مالك
foolish	غبي	advice	نصيحة	borrow	يستعير
refuse	يرفض	prepare	يعد	lend	يقرض
enough	كافي	relax	يسترخي	sweets	حلوي
wise	حكيم	common	شائع	dear	عزيزي
goose	إوزة	upset	منزعج	really	حقاً
geese	اوز	necklace	عقد	as soon as	بمجرد أن
birthday	عيد ميلاد	dinosaur	ديناصور	die out	ينقرض
a bit	قليلاً	earth	الأرض	meteorite	نيزك
speech	كلام / خطاب	fossils	حفريات	volcano	بركان
syllable	مقطع	work out	يحسب	smoke	دخان
stress	ضغط	kinds	أنواع	dust	غبار
refuse	حنالة / زبالة	lizards	زواحف	erupt	يثور
rubbish	زبالة	disappear	يختفي	gas	غاز
snake	ثعبان	theory	نظرية	atmosphere	غلاف جوي
close	حميم / قريب	weather	طقس	shine	تشرق
stick	عصا	disease	مرض	cool	بارد / يبرد
guess	يخمن	bones	عظام	sew	يخيط
probably	من المحتمل	giraffe	زرافة	farming	الزراعة
reason	سبب	crocodile	تمساح	hut	كوخ
cave	كهف	thirst	العطش	hippo	فرس النهر
guide	مرشد	thirsty	عطشان	clay	طين صلصال
exactly	بالضبط	hunger	الجوع	Ice Age	عصر جليد
stone	حجارة	hungry	جوعان	famous	مشهور
age	عصر	group	مجموعة	free	حر / مجاني

<b>weigh</b>	يزن	<b>diving</b>	الغوص	<b>dolphin</b>	دولفين
<b>grass</b>	عشب	<b>fantastic</b>	رائع	<b>autumn</b>	الخريف
<b>cans</b>	علب	<b>wavy</b>	متموج	<b>either</b>	ايضاً
<b>soup</b>	شربة	<b>wave</b>	موجه	<b>toy</b>	لعبة
<b>melt</b>	يزوب	<b>coral</b>	مرجان	<b>relief</b>	راحة
<b>protect</b>	يحمي	<b>reef</b>	سلسلة صخور	<b>excitement</b>	إثارة
<b>else</b>	آخر	<b>size</b>	مقاس	<b>excite</b>	يثير
<b>dolphin</b>	دولفين	<b>instructor</b>	معلم	<b>excited</b>	مسرور
<b>diving</b>	الغوص	<b>instruct</b>	يرشد	<b>abbreviatio</b>	اختصار

## Definitions

<b>enough</b>	as much as is necessary
<b>wise</b>	knowing many things
<b>goose</b>	a common white water bird
<b>golden</b>	made of gold
<b>greedy</b>	wanting more money, food, etc, than you need
<b>borrow</b>	take something from someone then return it later
<b>content</b>	Happy
<b>terrible</b>	very bad
<b>die out</b>	To disappear completely or no longer exists.
<b>erupt</b>	If a volcano erupts , it sends out smoke and fire into the sky .
<b>meteorite</b>	is a rock which comes from space.
<b>volcanoes</b>	A mountain that sometimes explodes and makes smoke come out.
<b>A theory</b>	An idea which might be true.
<b>A dinosaur</b>	Are animals which have died out
<b>coral</b>	is a group of animals that live together in large groups.
<b>special</b>	Better / mor important
<b>stingray</b>	is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.
<b>excitement</b>	The feeling of being excited
<b>instructor</b>	Someone who teaches a particular subject
<b>relief</b>	The feeling you have when you are no longer worried about something
<b>wreck</b>	Completely destroyed
<b>wavy</b>	Not straight / having curves
<b>twice</b>	Two times
<b>diver</b>	Someone who swims under water
<b>thirsty</b>	Feeling that you want to drink
<b>hungry</b>	Feeling that you want to eat

# Function Box

Responding to news ما نقوله عند سماع أي خبر

⇒How wonderful! /what good new!	عند سماع أخبار جيدة
⇒Really! I can't believe it!	good news
⇒Oh dear! /what bad news	عند سماع أخبار سيئة
⇒Oh no!	bad news
⇒How terrible!	

Giving dates you are not sure ofلنا متأكدين منهاالتحدث عن تواريخ

⇒(Dinosaurs lived) <b>about</b> 65 million years ago.	
⇒ (We think that people first lived) <b>maybe</b> 250,000 years ago	
⇒ (I'm going to talk to you <b>about</b> some people who lived) <b>almost</b> 8,000 years ago.	
⇒In <b>around</b> 8,000 BCE, (people began farming in North Africa)	

Showing relief الشعور بالراحة أو الاطمئنان	Showing excitement التعبير عن الاثارة
Phew!	Great!
What a relief!	I can't wait!
Thank goodness for that!	I'm looking forward to that.

## Language function

Showing relief	Showing excitement
Phew! What a relief!	Great! I can't wait!
Thank goodness for that	I'm looking forward to that
The situation	The response
We're not going shopping today.	Phew! I What a relief.
We're going swimming this afternoon.	I can't wait for that !
Ali fell off a wall, but he isn't hurt.	Than goodness for that !
You've all passed your speaking tests.	Oh ! I'm very happy to hear that!
The situationالموقف	The responseالاستجابة
You are worried	Oh dear! Oh no!
Someone tells you sad news	How terrible
Some one tells you happy news.	How wonderful! Really?
You are surprised due to something	Really ! I can't believe it!

I was walking home I saw someone fall into a canal.	( Oh no! How terrible.!) )
My father has bought me an expensive mobile .	( How wonderful )
My watch was broken while I was playing .	( How terrible )
I can't find my new mobile .	( Oh no! It's new! )



## Study the following

<b>Content</b> محتوي	Next year the content of the school book will change.
<b>Content</b> مرتاح البال / مطمئن	I hope you are content with us .
<b>Foolish</b> أحمق (صفة)	Don't be foolish .You know that you must work hard
<b>Refuse</b> يرفض + to + inf	Why did you refuse to help your mother with the housework?
<b>Refuse</b> حثالة / نفاية	Where did you throw the refuse ?
<b>Lay</b> تبيض / تضع / ترتب	Lay (laid - laid ) My mother laid the table / Birds lay eggs
<b>Lie</b> يكذب / كذبة	Lie ( lied – lied ) He lied to me about his age ./ Don't tell lies
<b>Lie</b> يستلقي / تقع	Lie ( lay – lain ) Egypt lies in the north of Africa ,
<b>Find out</b> يكتشف	He found out that the egg was made of gold.
<b>Greed</b> طمع / جشع	Greed , envy الحسد and hatred are social diseases .
<b>Enough</b> كافى + noun	Have you got enough money / The tea is hot enough.( قبلها صفة )
<b>Wise</b> عاقل / حكيم	The leader should be honest , patient , imaginative and wise.
<b>Work out</b> يحسب	Scientist have worked out that dinosaurs died out about 65 million years
<b>Come from</b>	Some animals today come from dinosaurs such as lizards and birds.
<b>Catch ( disease)</b>	Catch cold يصاب ببرد / catch disease يصاب بمرض / catch malaria ملاريا
<b>Stop +noun + ing</b>	A lot of smoke and dust can stop the sun shining
<b>Reason for</b>	There is more than one reason for the end of dinosaurs .
ياتي مع For زمن ماضي بسيط إذا انتهى الحدث ومضارع تام او تام مستمر إذا كان الحدث مازال مستمراً	
<b>For ( مدة زمنية )</b>	Dinosaurs lived on earth for more than 150 million years ( ماضي بسيط )
<b>For ( مدة زمنية )</b>	I have lived here for twenty years .( مضارع تام )

# TO BE CREATIVE



# EXCELLENCE IS YOUR GUIDE

1 – Finish the following dialogue:

**EXCELLENCE**

**YOUR BEST CHOICE**

### Ali and Sama are talking about dinosaurs

Ali: (1)-----

-----?

Sama: Dinosaurs lived on earth 150 million years ago.

Ali: Can we see them now?

Sama: (2)----- - They died out.

Ali: (3)-----?

Sama: The fossils show that there were more than 700 kinds of dinosaurs.

Ali: I think they were enormous animals.

Sama: (4)-----

### Some tourists and a diving instructor

Tourist: (1)-----?

Instructor: We are going to Shark Reef.

Tourist: How amazing!

Instructor: Have any of you swum near sharks before?

Tourist: (2)----- It is the first time.

Instructor: Well, listen carefully, you (3)-----

Tourist Ok, we will never come near it. (4)-----?

Instructor: Yes, it is very dangerous to get close a hungry shark.

### 2 – Write what you would say: -

- 1.The news says that the bad storm has moved away.
- 2.Your mother says that your friend can come to your party.
- 3.Your father tells you that you can go to the beach.
- 4.Your father let you buy the phone you want.
- 5.Your friend has passed his exam.
- 6.Your sister has had a new baby.
- 7.Your cousin asks you when your school was built.
- 8.Your teacher asks you for the age of the oldest part of Cairo. This was built around 1000 CE.
- 9.You have finished all your exams.
- 10.You are asked when dinosaurs lived, you are not sure about the date.
- 11.You ask your friend when people first lived on earth.
- 12.You ask your teacher when people began farming in North Africa.
- 13.You want to borrow your friend's camera.
- 14.You borrowed your friend's phone and broke it.
- 15.You heard that your uncle had an accident.

# Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:-

1.A story with a moral has a .....

- a. message                      b. sad ending                      c. happy ending                      d. no ending

2.If you feel content, you are .....

- a. sad                      b. angry                      c. scared                      d. happy

3.If you have enough water, you are.....

- a. thirsty                      b. not thirsty                      c. hungry                      d. not hungry

4.It is a good idea to ask a wise person for .....

- a. food                      b. wonders                      c. money                      d. advice

5.Shaimaa did not like the film. She thought it was .....

- a. terrible                      b. very good                      c. interesting                      d. exciting

6.Marwan asked to ..... Mustafa's phone so that he could call his mother.

- a. lend                      b. borrow                      c. steal                      d. solve

7.Robbers are very.....people. They always want to steal more money.

- a. brave                      b. greedy                      c. honest                      d. clever

8.I saw a beautiful white .....near the lake.

- a. goose                      b. fish                      c. apple                      d. lion

9.Khadeeja was very upset after she lost her..... necklace.

- a. wooden                      b. paper                      c. golden                      d. iron

10.There was a storm yesterday and now they can't find a ship. – How .....

- a. wonderful                      b. great                      c. good                      d. terrible

11.Small children are sometimes.....and want more sweets than they can eat.

- a. greedy                      b. satisfied                      c. nice                      d. good

12.If you want to..... your friend's laptop, you should ask first.

- a. borrow                      b. steal                      c. rob                      d. kill

13.My grandmother is very..she knows how to help most people who have problems.

- a. foolish                      b. wise                      c. young                      d. greedy

14.Always ..... for the future.

- a. prepare                      b. steal                      c. kill                      d. swim

15.As much as is necessary .....

- a. enough                      b. not enough                      c. little                      d. less

16.He is able to give good advice as he is .....

- a. wide                      b. ride                      c. lazy                      d. wise

17.The word content means -----

- a. happy                      b. sad                      c. not happy                      d. angry

18.Made of gold is -----

- a. wooden                      b. silver                      c. golden                      d. paper

19.Wanting more money, food, etc, than you need means -----

- a. content                      b. satisfied                      c. greedy                      d. happy

20.A common white water bird is a -----

- a. bear                      b. rabbit                      c. goose                      d. rat

21.The Ant was ----- food for the winter.

- a. collecting                      b. cooking                      c. buying                      d. selling





44. If something probably happened, you think it happened, but you are-----  
a. very certain                      b. certain                      c. sure                      d. not sure
45. The Stone -----was about 8,000 years ago.  
a. Ago                      b. Eagle                      c. century                      d. Age
46. -----is important because it gives us food to eat.  
a. Trade                      b. Industry                      c. Farming                      d. Tourism
47. We need to protect many of our animals if we don't want them to -----  
a. sleep                      b. eat                      c. live                      d. die out
48. Abdou stopped and rested in a ----- when he was climbing the mountain.  
a. hotel                      b. motel                      c. villa                      d. cave
49. The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden----- on the beach.  
a. shells                      b. Pans                      c. huts                      d. books
50. Why did dinosaurs die out? There are different-----  
a. theories                      b. hobbies                      c. subjects                      d. bags
51. What was the----- of the accident?  
a. sword                      b. planet                      c. cause                      d. plant
52. The ----- of the book was boring, but the end was very exciting.  
a. end                      b. beginning                      c. final                      d. finish
53. How long did it take them to ----- the Qasr al-Nile Bridge?  
a. build                      b. buy                      c. sell                      d. cook
54. Tomorrow's lesson will ----- at half past ten.  
a. begins                      b. begin                      c. began                      d. beginning
55. This hotel is the tallest----- in the city.  
a. building                      b. book                      c. bridge                      d. river
56. Hippos live in big-----of 30 or more.  
a. groups                      b. classes                      c. rooms                      d. bags
57. Hippos are large animals with small-----  
a. skin                      b. heads                      c. ears                      d. hearts
58. Hippos eat about 35 kilos of ----- a day.  
a. meat                      b. grass                      c. glass                      d. oil
59. People learnt to ----- things with stone.  
a. do                      b. build                      c. make                      d. form
60. ----- have found cave art in different places.  
a. Doctors                      b. Nurses                      c. Archaeologists                      d. Teachers
61. People used bones to----- clothes.  
a. sew                      b. sow                      c. sue                      d. due
62. The Red Sea is good for-----  
a. diving                      b. driving                      c. cycling                      d. sleeping
63. Ras Mohammed is a -----park near the Red Sea.  
a. local                      b. international                      c. national                      d. global
64. People go diving and ----- in the sea.  
a. snorkeling                      b. singing                      c. drawing                      d. digging
65. Have you been----- as interesting as Alexandria.  
a. any book                      b. any hobby                      c. anywhere                      d. any food

66. Don't go diving when the sea is-----

- a. clean                                      b. quiet                                      c. calm                                      d. rough

67. A ----- is a group of animals that live together in large groups.

- a. coral                                      b. comma                                      c. books                                      d. wheat

68. A ----- is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.

- a. bee                                      b. shark                                      c. stingray                                      d. hippo

69. ....are very intelligent. They often jump out of the water in front of our boat.

- a. Dolphins                                      b. Elephants                                      c. Lions                                      d. Horses

70. The ----- said he saw some beautiful coral under the sea.

- a. banker                                      b. doorman                                      c. driver                                      d. diver

71. The best place to see fish is in the old ----- of a boat near the island.

- a. pool                                      b. book                                      c. deck                                      d. wreck

72. There was a lot of .....when the tourists saw some dolphins following the boat.

- a. shoots                                      b. shouts                                      c. cries                                      d. excitement

73. Don't worry if you haven't swum before. The .....will show you what to do.

- a. firefighter                                      b. instructor                                      c. dentist                                      d. doctor

74. It was a ..... to hear that nobody was hurt in the accident.

- a. belief                                      b. sadness                                      c. relief                                      d. anger

75. That big, flat fish is a .....

- a. stingray                                      b. marlin                                      c. whale                                      d. crocodile

76. We didn't know where to dive before the ..... helped us.

- a. instructor                                      b. bellboy                                      c. singer                                      d. tailor

77. When they were diving, they saw the ----- of an old ship.

- a. desk                                      b. disc                                      c. wreck                                      d. risk

78. " Kmh" refers to-----

- a. kilometer an hour                                      b. meter                                      c. an hour                                      d. per hour

79. Sharks are----- sea animals.

- a. tame                                      b. dangerous                                      c. pet                                      d. funny

80. I ----- diving three times a month.

- a. play                                      b. do                                      c. go                                      d. did

81. Corals look like plants, but they are very small animals that live-----

- a. sadly                                      b. lonely                                      c. alone                                      d. together

82. Thousands of birds stop here ----- their way to Africa.

- a. in                                      b. above                                      c. on                                      d. among

83. -----, he lost the last match.

- a. Happily                                      b. Fortunately                                      c. Unfortunately                                      d. Luckily

84. We can't go diving without our diving -----

- a. book                                      b. equipment                                      c. hobbies                                      d. pens

85. We are going to the ----- where we can see some sharks.

- a. balcony                                      b. Toilets                                      c. Fun Fair                                      d. Shark Reef

86. Phew! what a -----!

- a. relief                                      b. relieve                                      c. believe                                      d. advise

87. Diving is not dangerous, but you must be-----

- a. sad                                      b. careless                                      c. careful                                      d. ill

88. I am looking forward to----- them.

a. meeting                      b. met                      c. meet                      d. meets

89. The water is dirty, for this ----- he won't drink it.

a. reason                      b. season                      c. treasure                      d. goodness

90. The world would have 20----- fewer kinds of fish.

a. percent                      b. goals                      c. cent                      d. send

# GRAMMAR

## The past perfect

ملاحظات عامة على الماضي التام :-

١ - يتكون الماضي التام كالآتي :-

**مفعول + had + P.P. + فاعل**

He had done his homework before he watched TV.

After they had played football, they ate lunch.

٢ - يتم النفي بوضع (not) :-

He didn't go to the concert because he hadn't booked the ticket.

٣ - في حالة السؤال يكون الشكل كالآتي :-

**Had + فاعل + P.P. ....?**

Had they done their homework?

Had she cooked lunch before going out?

٤ - يستخدم الماضي التام مع الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدثان في الماضي . الحدث الذي يحدث أولاً يكون ماضي تام والحدث الثاني يكون ماضي بسيط وذلك مع الروابط الآتية :-

**1 - After = As soon as ----- ماضي بسيط ----- ماضي تام**

After he had eaten, he watched TV.

As soon as she had arrived, they started the party.

**2 - Before = By the time ----- ماضي بسيط ----- ماضي تام**

Before they left, they had washed the dishes.

By the time I reached the station, the train had left.

**3 - ماضي تام till / until ..... ماضي بسيط منفي**

He didn't go out until he had taken the money.

She didn't cook till she had bought her needs.

٥ - يمكن استخدام كلمة (when) ويأتي بعدها ماضي تام ثم ماضي بسيط والعكس ودائماً الحدث الذي يتم أولاً يكون ماضي تام.

When he arrived, the train had left.

هنا القطار غادر أولاً ثم وصل هو أي لم يلحق القطار

When he had arrived, the train left.

هنا هو وصل أولاً ثم القطار غادر أي أنه لحق القطار

٦ - إذا لم يأتى فاعل بعد (after / before) نضع (V + ing) :-

After he had done homework, he slept.

= After doing homework, he slept.

Before she went out, she had helped her mother.

= Before going out, she had helped her mother.

٧ - يمكن استخدام كلمة (Having) بدلاً من كلمة (after) ويأتي بعدها دائماً تصريف ثالث (p.p) :-

After he had written the letter, he sent it.

Having written the letter, he sent it.

٨ - يمكن استخدام الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع (because) :-

EXCELLENCE

YOUR BEST CHOICE

Basant was upset because he father hadn't phoned her.

٩ - يأتي الماضي التام بعد ( سنة / مدة / By )

By 2010, he had learnt to swim.

By 7 o'clock this morning, I had done all my jobs.

١٠ - اذا جاء جملتين وطلب استخدام رابط من الروابط السابقة كالآتي :-

First he arrived then they ate lunch. (After)

After he had arrived, they ate lunch.

Ali played football, then he returned home. (Before)

Before he returned home, he had played football.

### حالات الشرط If conditions

ملاحظات على حالات الشرط

يوجد ثلاث حالات رئيسية للشرط وهي :-

١ - الحالة الأولى وتعبر عت التوقع او الاحتمال في المستقبل والوعد والتهديد وتتكون كالآتي :-

مصدر + will /may/might ----- (مضارع بسيط) If --- present simple

If you play well, you will win. (توقع)

If he comes late, she will punish him. (تهديد)

If they get high marks, I will reward them. (وعد)

٢ - الحالة الثانية وتعبر عن الاستحالة في المضارع وتتكون كالآتي :-

مصدر + would /might/could ----- (ماضي بسيط) If---- past simple

If he played well, he would win.

If I were you, I would study hard.

If I were rich, I would help them. مستحيل أن يكون غني في الوقت الحالي

معلومة هامة نستخدم التعبير الآتي لأعطاء النصيحة بمعنى (should) :-

If I were you, I would + مصدر ----- = You should

If I were you, I wouldn't + مصدر ---- = you shouldn't

If I were you, I would come early.

= You should come early.

٣ - الحالة الثالثة وتعبر عن الندم والتمنى في الماضي وتتكون كالآتي :-

If --- past perfect (ماضي تام) --- would/might/could have + p.p

If they had played well, they would have won.

If the doctor had arrived early, he would have saved the patient.

ملاحظات عامة

١ - يمكن استخدام (if) بمعنى اذا أو لو أما كلمة (unless) معناها اذا لم وهي عكسها :-

If he arrives early, he will catch the bus. (Unless)

Unless he arrives early, he won't catch the bus.

ولاحظ أيضا أن :-

If + النفي = Unless

If he didn't arrive early, he would miss the bus. (Unless)

Unless he arrived early, he would miss the bus.

٢ - يمكن أن تأتي (if) في أول الجملة أو في وسط الجملة :-

If she studied hard, she would come first.

She would come first if she studied hard.



٣ - يمكن استخدام كلمة (could) للتعبير عن القدرة أو الاستطاعة وكلمة (might) للتعبير عن الاحتمال في كل الحالات كالآتي :-

- ✍ If he arrives early, he might catch the train.
- ✍ If he had been here yesterday, he could have helped me.
- ✍ If they had played well, they might have won the cup.

٤ - اذا جاء جملتين وطلب استخدام (if) فنحول الاثبات لنفي والنفي الى اثبات مع ملاحظة اذا جاء الزمن مضارع نستخدم الحاله الثانيه واذا جاء الزمن ماضي نستخدم الحاله الثالثه ( هام جداً لسؤال الـ Rewrite )

1 - He plays well so he wins the match. (If)  
هنا زمن الجملة مضارع لذا سوف نستخدم الحاله الثانيه كالآتي :-

- ✍ If he didn't play well, he wouldn't win the match.
- 2 - They didn't arrive early so they missed the train. (If)  
هنا زمن الجملة ماضي لذا سوف نستخدم الحاله الثالثه كالآتي :-

✍ If they had arrived early, they wouldn't have missed the train.  
٥ - واذا جاءت الحاله الثالثه من (if) وطلب استخدام (so) أو (because) فنستخدم الجملتين ماضي بسيط كالآتي :-

- ✍ If he had helped me, I wouldn't have failed. (so)
- ✍ He didn't help me, so I failed.
- ٦ - في حالة الاستفهام نستخدم الشكل الاتي :-

- 1 - What will happen if he studies hard?
- 2 - What would happen if he studied hard?
- 3 - What would have happened if he had studied hard?

انتبه جيداً في سؤال الـ ( Rewrite ) اذا جاءت (so) نبدأ بالجملة الأولى واذا جاءت (because) نبدأ بالجملة الثانية كالآتي :-

- ✍ He didn't get high marks, because he didn't study hard. (If)
- ✍ If he had studied hard, he would have got high marks. Stop Here!!

had	الحالة الثانية	مصدر + would	الحالة الثانية
had + p.p	الحالة الثالثة	would + have	الحالة الثانية
had had	الحالة الثالثة	would have + p.p	الحالة الثالثة

**Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:-**

1. The lesson had already started when he.....the classroom.  
a. entered                      b. enter                      c. entering                      d. had entered
2. Reem was upset because her friend..... her.  
a. hadn't phoned                      b. doesn't phone                      c. won't phone                      d. phoning
3. Nobody knew about the site because everyone ..... about it.  
a. forgets                      b. had forgotten                      c. forgetting                      d. have forgotten
4. After we.....the museum, we decide to have lunch.  
a. visiting                      b. has visited                      c. had visited                      d. visit
5. Having----- lunch, they left.  
a. eat                      b. eaten                      c. ate                      d. eating
6. Fareeda enjoyed visiting Sohag because she ----- there before.  
a. hadn't been                      b. have been                      c. won't been                      d. isn't been
7. By 2010, I ----- French

- a. had learnt                      b. have learnt                      c. has learnt                      d. learn
- 8. We didn't eat in the restaurant because we ----- already.**
- a. eating                      b. had eaten                      c. eat                      d. eats
- 9. Before ----- homework, he had had his lunch.**
- a. do                      b. did                      c. doing                      d. had done
- 10. As soon as I had studied, I ----- out.**
- a. go                      b. goes                      c. had gone                      d. went
- 11. He ----- the letter until he had written it.**
- a. didn't send                      b. won't send                      c. hadn't sent                      d. doesn't send
- 12. ----- I had played football, I studied my lessons.**
- a. Before                      b. Having                      c. On                      d. After
- 13. ----- watched the match, I went out.**
- a. Having                      b. After                      c. Before                      d. As soon as
- 14. ----- 2003, I had learnt to swim.**
- a. In                      b. Since                      c. On                      d. By
- 15. I didn't go out ----- taking the money.**
- a. until                      b. till                      c. without                      d. having
- 16. If we ----- to the sports club tomorrow, we will phone you.**
- a. went                      b. go                      c. goes                      d. had gone
- 17. If I was a small child, I ----- that toy.**
- a. will love                      b. would love                      c. love                      d. had loved
- 18. If I went to England, I ----- go to Cambridge.**
- a. will                      b. were                      c. would                      d. had
- 19. If my uncle ----- in England, he would have spoken good English.**
- a. lived                      b. live                      c. lives                      d. had lived
- 20. If I see Ali, I ----- ask him for help.**
- a. might                      b. were                      c. had                      d. doesn't
- 21. If it ----- yesterday, we might have gone to the beach.**
- a. hadn't rained                      b. hasn't rained                      c. didn't rain                      d. had rained
- 22. If I ----- to the museum, our friends might be there.**
- a. go                      b. goes                      c. had gone                      d. gone
- 23. Haytham would have fresh bread if he ----- in a bakery.**
- a. works                      b. worked                      c. had worked                      d. work
- 24. If I ----- by the sea, I would have learnt to sail.**
- a. live                      b. lived                      c. living                      d. had lived
- 25. If you go to the desert at night, it ----- quiet.**
- a. will be                      b. would be                      c. be                      d. would
- 26. If you ----- a holiday what would you do?**
- a. have                      b. had                      c. has                      d. had had
- 27. If there hadn't been any buses, how ----- to school?**
- a. will you travel                      b. would you travel                      c. would you have travelled                      d. will you travelling
- 28. If you have enough money, ----- buy a car?**
- a. you will                      b. will you                      c. you would                      d. would you

29.If I had free time, I ----- diving every day.

- a. will go                      b. could go                      c. go                      d. would have gone

30.If you -----in some parts of the world, the sea will be rough.

- a. dives                      b. dive                      c. dived                      d. had dived

31.I wouldn't have taken any photos if I ----- my special camera.

- a. didn't take                      b. don't take                      c. hadn't taken                      d. won't take

32.If I ----- the answer, I would have told you.

- a. know                      b. knew                      c. known                      d. had known

33.----- you study hard, you will fail.

- a. If                      b. Unless                      c. were                      d. Had

34.If I -----more money, I would have helped the poor.

- a. have                      b. has                      c. had                      d. had had

35.If I had found money, I ----- to my father.

- a. will give                      b. would give                      c. would given                      d. would have given

36.What would you have done if it ----- yesterday?

- a. rain                      b. rains                      c. had rained                      d. rained If the weather

37. is good today, we will----- snorkelling.

- a. go                      b. goes                      c. going                      d. went

38.If Amr ----- his cousins, he would have given them the photos.

- a. visiting                      b. had visited                      c. visits                      d. visited

39.If he put on weight, he ----- a sport.

- a. will do                      b. would do                      c. does                      d. do

40.If you ----- off that wall, you would hurt yourself.

- a. fallen                      b. fell                      c. fall                      d. fells

41.If Sara wins the race, she ----- happy.

- a. would be                      b. wouldn't be                      c. will be                      d. won't be

42.If we ----- the Red Sea, the world would have 20% fewer kinds of fish.

- a. don't have                      b. didn't have                      c. hadn't had                      d. had had

43.If a shark is eating, it ----- not be happy to see you.

- a. did                      b. would                      c. might                      d. do

44.If they ----- the farm, they would see lots of animals.

- a. visiting                      b. visit                      c. visited                      d. had visited

45.If they ----- help, I would have given them a hand.

- a. need                      b. needed                      c. had needed                      d. needs

2 – Rewrite the following sentences:

1.You ought to arrive early. (If)

2.Unless she had studied hard, she would have failed. (If)

3.He didn't win because he was lazy. (If)

4.If Ali had had time, he would have visited his uncle. (because)

5.If she had been careful, she wouldn't have made the accident. (so)

6.If he doesn't play well, he might lose. (Unless)

7.Arriving early will help you pass. (If)

8.If he studied hard, he would come first. (Should)

9.If I were a doctor, I would help you. (Omit if)

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| 10.If he was rich, he would buy a car.                          | (had)           |
| 11.First he watched TV, then he ate lunch.                      | (After)         |
| 12.After they had cooked lunch, Ali arrived.                    | (before)        |
| 13.As soon as he had arrived, the train left.                   | (Having)        |
| 14.They didn't eat. They hadn't bought food.                    | (because)       |
| 15.Before he went to school, he had packed his bag.             | ( After)        |
| 16.He had a shower then watched TV.                             | (As soon as)    |
| 17.Before he read the story, he had borrowed it.                | (reading)       |
| 18.Mona cooked dinner. They ate it.                             | (After)         |
| 19.He didn't go out without taking the money.                   | (until)         |
| 20.Ali had left the house before his father came.               | (after)         |
| 21.She didn't buy the books till she had saved money.           | (After)         |
| 22.After he had arrived, they ate lunch.                        | (then)          |
| 23.By the time I did my work, I had prepared well.              | (before)        |
| 24.As soon as he had left, his brother came.                    | (by the time)   |
| 25.I didn't know the answer, so I didn't tell you.              | (If)            |
| 26.If they don't play well, they will lose.                     | (Unless)        |
| 27.I didn't have more money, so I didn't buy the expensive toy. | (If)            |
| 28.He didn't get high marks because he didn't study hard.       | (If)            |
| 29.Because my father drove me to school, I arrived on time.     | (If)            |
| 30.You should study hard.                                       | (if I were you) |
| 31.If you didn't arrive early, you would miss the train.        | (Unless)        |
| 32.If I were them, I wouldn't sell the car.                     | (shouldn't)     |
| 33.I am not tall, so I can't play basketball.                   | (If)            |
| 34.If Ali had played well, he would have won.                   | (because)       |
| 35.I was tired, therefore I didn't watch the documentary.       | (If)            |
| 36.I advise you to do your best.                                | (If)            |
| 37.He arrived early, so he caught the metro.                    | (if)            |
| 38.Unless she had cooked, they would have eaten out.            | (If)            |
| 39.Study hard or you will fail.                                 | (If)            |
| 40.Having written the e-mail, she posted it.                    | (By the time)   |

**3 – Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about ONE of the following:**

- 1.a story with a moral.
- 2.Your favourite sport.
- 3.Your favourite animal.
- 4.Your visit to the zoo.
- 5.Sea animals.
- 6.Water sports.

اللغات تختلف مع مدرب محترف